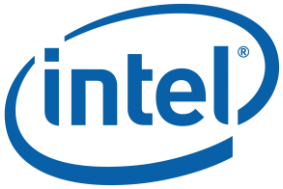


Intel® Rapid Storage Technology

OEM Technical Guide

For the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology Release Version 13.2

Revision 1.1

Intel Confidential

INFORMATION IN THIS DOCUMENT IS PROVIDED IN CONNECTION WITH INTEL® PRODUCTS. NO LICENSE, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, BY ESTOPPEL OR OTHERWISE, TO ANY INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS IS GRANTED BY THIS DOCUMENT. EXCEPT AS PROVIDED IN INTEL'S TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF SALE FOR SUCH PRODUCTS, INTEL ASSUMES NO LIABILITY WHATSOEVER, AND INTEL DISCLAIMS ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY, RELATING TO SALE AND/OR USE OF INTEL PRODUCTS INCLUDING LIABILITY OR WARRANTIES RELATING TO FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, MERCHANTABILITY, OR INFRINGEMENT OF ANY PATENT, COPYRIGHT OR OTHER INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHT. Intel products are not intended for use in medical, lifesaving, or life sustaining applications.

Intel may make changes to specifications and product descriptions at any time, without notice.

Designers must not rely on the absence or characteristics of any features or instructions marked "reserved" or "undefined." Intel reserves these for future definition and shall have no responsibility whatsoever for conflicts or incompatibilities arising from future changes to them.

The products described in this document may contain design defects or errors known as errata which may cause the product to deviate from published specifications. Current characterized errata are available on request.

Contact your local Intel sales office or your distributor to obtain the latest specifications and before placing your product order.

Intel and the Intel logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

*Other names and brands may be claimed as the property of others.

Copyright © 2014, Intel Corporation. All rights reserved.

Contents

1 About This Document 9
1.1 Purpose and Scope of this Document 9
2 Intel® Rapid Storage Technology 10
2.1 Overview 10
2.1.1 Product Release Numbering Scheme 10
2.1.2 RAID Levels 11
2.1.3 Typical Usage Model for RAID Levels 12
2.1.4 Supported Platforms for This Release 12
2.1.5 Supported Operating Systems for This Release 13
2.1.6 Supported MSFT* Performance Debug Tools 13
3 Intel® Rapid Storage Technology Suite 14
3.1 Intel® Rapid Storage Technology Software 14
3.2 Intel® Rapid Storage Technology Option ROM 15
3.3 Intel pre-OS RAID Configuration Utilities 15
3.3.1 RCfgSata Utility for MS-DOS* and UEFI 15
3.4 RSTCLI (32/64 bit) Windows Utilities 17
3.5 UEFI System BIOS and the Intel® RST UEFI/RAID Package 25
3.5.1 Specification References 25
3.5.2 What Intel® RST Provides to OEMs/BIOS Vendors 25
3.5.3 UEFI System BIOS Requirements for Platform Compatibility with Intel® RST UEFI 28
3.5.4 How-to-Enable the Platform with Intel® RST UEFI Driver/HII_GUI 30
3.5.5 Known Compatibility Issues with the UEFI Self Certification Test (UEFI SCT) tool 31
4 Intel Rapid Storage Technology for PCIe Storage 34
4.1.1 OEM System BIOS Requirements 34
4.1.2 General Requirements 34
4.1.3 Warnings 35
4.1.4 Intel Rapid Storage Technology for PCIe Storage Use cases 35
4.1.5 Intel® Customer Reference Board BIOS Settings 36
4.1.6 Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UEFI Compliance Utitlity for PCIe Storage 37
5 Using Dynamic Storage Accelerator (DSA) 38
5.1.1 OEM System BIOS Vendors' Requirements 38
5.1.2 General Requirements 38
5.1.3 Configuring DSA 40
5.1.4 Configuring DSA using Intel® RSTCLI 32/64 Windows* Utilities 41
6 How to Enable the Platform for Intel® RST Support of BIOS Fast Boot 42
6.1.1 OEM System BIOS Vendors' Requirements 42
6.1.2 Supported System Configurations 42
7 Creating a RAID Volume 44
7.1 Using the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UI 44
7.2 Using the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology Legacy Option ROM User Interface 45

7.3 Using the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UEFI User Interface 45
7.4 Using the RAID Configuration Utilities (DOS, UEFI Shell, and Windows) 50

8 Deleting a RAID Volume 51
8.1 Using the Windows User Interface Utility 51
8.2 Using the Option ROM User Interface 51
8.3 Using the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UEFI User Interface 52
8.4 Using the RAID Configuration Utilities (DOS, UEFI Shell, and Windows) 52

9 Common RAID Setup Procedures 53
9.1 Build a SATA RAID 0, 1, 5 or 10 System 53
9.2 Build a "RAID Ready" System 54
9.3 Migrate to RAID 0 or RAID 1 on an Existing "RAID Ready" System 55
9.4 Migrate an Existing Data Hard Drive to a RAID 0 or RAID 1 Volume 55
9.5 Migrating From one RAID Level to Another 56
9.6 Create a RAID Volume on Intel® SATA Controller While Booting to Different Controller 57
9.7 Build a RAID 0 or RAID 1 System in an Automated Factory Environment 57
9.7.1 Part 1: Create the Master Image 58
9.7.2 Part 2: Apply the Master Image 58

10 RAID Volume Data Verification and Repair Feature 59
10.1 Verify and Repair Volume Feature 59
10.2 Verify and Repair Scheduler 59

11 Intel® Rapid Recover Technology 61
11.1 Creating a Recovery Volume Through the RAID Option ROM 61
11.2 Creating a Recovery Volume Using the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UEFI User Interface 62
11.3 Creating a Recovery Volume Through the Intel® RST UI 62
11.4 Changing Recovery Volume Modes 63
11.5 Update Recovery Volume in On Request Update Policy 63
11.6 Access Recovery Drive Files 64
11.7 Hide Recovery Drive Files 64
11.8 Scenarios of Recovering Data 65

12 System Running from Recovery Drive 67
12.1 Drive Offline or Missing 67

13 Pre-OS Installation of the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology Driver 68
13.1 Pre-OS Driver Installation Using the "Load Driver" Method 68

14 Determining the Version of the RAID Driver 69
14.1 Using Intel® Rapid Storage Technology User Interface (UI) 69
14.2 Using Intel® RST File Properties (Alternate) 69
14.3 Determining the Version of the Option ROM 70
14.3.1 Using the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UI 70
14.3.2 Using the Intel® RST Option ROM User Interface 70
14.3.3 Using the EFI Shell 70

15 Un-installation 71
15.1 Uninstalling the Intel® RST Software (except the RAID Driver) 71
15.2 Disabling the RAID Driver by Disabling the RAID Controller 71

16 Registry Customizations 73

16.1 Zero Power ODD Settings 74
16.2 E-mail Notification UI Visible Enable/Disable 74
16.3 Disabling Maximized Mode Option for Intel® SRT 75
16.4 Rebuild On Hot Insert 76
16.5 SATA Asynchronous Notification 76
16.6 Runtime D3 (RTD3) 77
16.7 Hybrid Hinting 77
16.7.1 Instructions to Disable Hybrid Hinting 77
16.7.2 Hybrid Hint Reset 78
16.7.3 Disable Hybrid Hinting During Hibernation 78

17 Power Savings with Intel® Rapid Storage Technology 79
17.1 Link Power Management (LPM) 79
17.1.1 Instructions to disable/enable LPM 79
17.2 Runtime D3 (RTD3) 81
17.2.1 Adapter RTD3 Support 81
17.3 DEVSLP 81
17.3.1 DEVSLP Registry Key Setting: 83
17.4 InstantGo* Device Notification Support 83
17.4.1 Requirements 84
17.4.2 Detail Description 84
17.4.3 Registry Settings 85

18 Legacy RAID Option ROM and Utilities 86
18.1.1 General Requirements 86

19 HDD Password Support With RAID Volumes 87
19.1 HDD Password Use Cases 87
19.2 Unlocking Password Protected Disks 88

20 Intel® Smart Response Technology – Dual Drive Configuration 89
20.1 Overview 89
20.1.2 Requirements and Limitations 90
20.1.3 Acceleration Modes 92
20.2 Dynamic Cache Sharing Between SRT and Rapid Start 93
20.3 Build a New System with Disk/Volume Acceleration Enabled 93
20.3.1 Prepare New Computer 94
20.3.2 Setup the HW for Installing the OS to an Accelerated Disk/Volume . 94
20.3.3 If Using RSTCLI32/64 (compatible with WinPE) 95
20.3.4 If Using the Intel® RST UI 97
20.4 Installing the OS to a New System Prepared for Disk/Volume Acceleration 98
20.4.1 For Acceleration Components Pre-configured Via RCfgSata (DOS or UEFI Shell) 98
20.4.2 For Acceleration Components Pre-configured Via RSTCLI 32/64 (Windows) 98
20.5 OEM System Manufacturing and Intel® Smart Response Technology 99
20.5.1 Imaging an OS onto a Pre-Configured Acceleration-enabled HDD 99
20.5.2 Enabling Acceleration post end user OOBE 100
20.6 OEM System Manufacturing and Cache Pre-load for Intel® Smart Response Technology 102
20.6.1 Requirements 102
20.6.2 Process 103
20.6.3 Replicating the Accelerated HDD and SSD for Mass Production 106

21 Intel® Smart Response Technology Hybrid Drive Accelerator 107
21.1 Overview 107
21.1.1 Driver/OROM updates for supporting Hybrid Hints Accelerated systems: 107
21.1.2 Requirements and Limitations 108
21.2 Dynamic Cache Sharing Between SRT and Rapid Start 109
21.3 Build a New System with Hybrid Drive Acceleration Enabled 110
21.3.1 Prepare New Computer 110
21.4 OEM System Manufacturing and Cache Pre-load for Intel® Smart Response Technology 111
21.4.1 Requirements 111
21.4.2 Process 111
21.4.3 Setup System for Cache Loading 112

22 ATA Power-Up in Standby (PUIS) Supporting Intel® Smart Connect Technology‡ 116
22.1.1 Overview 117
22.1.2 Theory of Operation 117

23 Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UI 120
23.1 Introduction 120
23.1.1 Getting Started 121
23.1.2 Understanding the Application 123
23.1.3 Notification Area 125
23.2 Storage System Status 126
23.2.1 Understanding the Status 126
23.2.2 Storage System View 127
23.3 Creating a Volume 129
23.3.1 Volume Requirements 129
23.3.2 Creation Process 131
23.3.3 Creating Additional Volumes 135
23.4 Managing the Storage System 136
23.4.1 Managing Arrays 137
23.4.2 Managing Volumes 141
23.4.3 Managing Disks 155
23.4.4 Managing Ports 160
23.4.5 Managing ATAPI Devices 160
23.4.6 Managing Solid-State Hybrid Drives (SSHD) 161
23.5 Accelerating the Storage System 161
23.5.1 Cache Device Properties 162
23.5.2 Enabling Acceleration 164
23.5.3 Disabling Acceleration 165
23.5.4 Changing Acceleration Mode 166
23.5.5 Accelerating a Disk or Volume 167
23.5.6 Resetting a Cache Device to Available 167
23.5.7 Disassociating the Cache Memory 168
23.6 Preferences 169

24 Opal Drive Support 170
24.1 Opal ATA Commands Supported 170
24.2 Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UI Support 170
24.3 Opal SCSI Commands Supported 170
24.4 Opal UEFI Protocol Supported 170

25 eDrive Support 171

25.1 What is an eDrive? 171
25.2 SCSI Standard Inquiry Command Response 171
25.3 Configurations Supported 171

26 Using the BCFS to Differentiate Platform SKUs 172
26.1 Configuring the Platform's RAID Related Features 172
26.1.1 Configuring the Standard Supported RAID Levels 172
26.1.2 Configuring Intel® RRT Related RAID Features 173
26.1.3 Configuring the Behavior of the OROM UI and Banner 174
26.1.4 Configuring Intel® RST UI Capabilities 175
26.1.5 Configuring the Platform to Support Intel® Smart Response Technology 175
26.1.6 BIOS Control Feature Set 176

27 Testing, Certification Notes 178
27.1 Correcting Microsoft* Windows 7 (Win7) WHQL test failure 178

28 Glossary 179

29 Troubleshooting 187
29.1 Failed Volumes 187
29.2 Degraded Volumes 189
29.3 Other Volume States 192
29.4 Disk Events 195
29.5 Caching Issues 197
29.6 Software Errors 200

30 Appendix A: RST SATA Port Bitmap Implementation 201
30.1 Legacy OROM 201
30.2 UEFI Driver 202

31 Appendix B: Common Storage Management Interface Support (CSMI) 203

32 Appendix C: Drive and Volume Encryption Support 204
32.1 ATA Security Commands and HDD Password Support 204
32.2 Self-Encrypting Drives (SED) 204
32.3 Solid State Hybrid Drives (SSHD's) with Encryption 204
32.4 RAID Volume and Drive Partition Encryption 204

Revision History

Revision Number	Description	Intel® Rapid Storage Release Version	Revision Date
Intel® RST 13.2 Release			
0.5	• Initial Draft	13.2	June 5, 2014
0.8	• Removed Rapid Start/Dynamic Cache Sharing support from Broadwell Mobile Platforms and newer.	13.2	June 6, 2014
0.8	• Add eDrive support for Pass-thru disks in AHCI and RAID mode Section 25	13.2	June 8, 2014
0.8	• Section 2.1.4 – added support for platform Broadwell U / Y Premium and Base	13.2	June 8, 2014
0.8	• Removed TRIM on RAID 0 only on Win7. TRIM is supported on all OS supported versions for this release	13.2	June 9, 2014
0.8	• Section 23.4.3.2 removed unlocking a password protected disk in the UI – not supported	13.2	June 9, 2014
0.8	• 23.5.1 updated cache properties page to supported OS's.	13.2	June 9, 2014
1.0	• Final Review	13.2	June 10, 2014
1.1	• Removed High End Desktop SKUs x79 and x99 from 13.2 release	13.2	Jun 23, 2014

1 About This Document

1.1 Purpose and Scope of this Document

This document will assist customers in evaluating, testing, configuring, and enabling RAID and AHCI functionality on platforms using the *Intel® Rapid Storage Technology* software for the chipset components as listed in the product's Readme.txt file.

This document also describes installation procedures, Caching Acceleration techniques, other RST features, RAID volume management such as creating, deleting, and modifying volumes, common usage models, and any special notes necessary to enable customers to develop their RAID-compatible products.

2 Intel® Rapid Storage Technology

Intel® Rapid Storage Technology (Intel® RST) provides added performance and reliability for systems equipped with serial ATA (SATA) hard drives and/or solid state disk (SSD) drives and/or Peripheral Components Interconnect Express Solid State Drive (PCIe SSD's) to enable an optimal PC storage solution. It offers value-add features such as RAID, advanced Serial ATA* capabilities (for detailed OS support, review the Release Notes for each software release). The driver also offers Non-volatile (NV) caching for performance and application acceleration with device of MEMORY GROUP 3 or faster used as the cache memory device.

The RAID solution supports RAID level 0 (striping), RAID level 1 (mirroring), RAID level 5 (striping with parity) and RAID level 10 (striping and mirroring). Specific platform support is dependent upon the available SATA ports.

A configuration supporting two RAID levels can also be achieved by having two volumes in a single RAID array that use Intel® RST. These are called matrix arrays. Typical for desktops, workstations, and entry level servers, Intel® RST RAID solution addresses the demand for high-performance or data-redundant platforms. OEMs are also finding it beneficial to implement this RAID capability into mobile platforms as well.

Reference documents:

For detailed use case information on the features also refer to the below documents on CDI

- RST 13.0 Validation Use case document

- RST Pre 13.0 Validation Use case document

2.1 Overview

2.1.1 Product Release Numbering Scheme

The product release **version** is divided into 4 sections or numbers (**AA**.**B**.**CC**.**DDDD**, e.g. **12**.**0**.**0**.**1001**).

Number / Section	Description
AA: **Major Release Number**	This section represents the major release version of the product. It usually is usually associated with a major change in features or new platform/chipset launch.

B: **Minor (Maintenance) Release Number**	This section represents the minor release version of the product. If this number is **non-zero**, then the release is a minor release of the **AA** major release version. This can represent a maintenance release with several bug fixes or it can align with a platform refresh as example.
CC: **Hot Fix Release Number**	This section represents customer specific hot fixes. If this number is **non-zero**, then the release is a customer specific hot fix release to resolve a customer specific issue.
DDDD: **Release Build Number**	This section represents the build number of release **AA.B.CC**, **Note:** for production releases, the build number always begins with the number '1' (e.g. AA.B.CC.1001)

2.1.2 RAID Levels

RAID 0 (striping)

RAID level 0 combines two to six drives so that all data is divided into manageable blocks called strips. The strips are distributed across the array members on which the RAID 0 volume resides. This improves read/write performance, especially for sequential access, by allowing adjacent data to be accessed from more than one hard drive simultaneously. However, data stored in a RAID 0 volume is not redundant. Therefore, if one hard drive fails, all data on the volume is lost.
The RAID 0 volume appears as a single physical hard drive with a capacity equal to twice the size of the smaller hard drive.
The Intel® SATA AHCI/RAID controllers with Intel Rapid Storage Technology allows up to six** drives to be combined into a single RAID 0 array, providing additional scaling of storage performance.
**Note: the number of drives supported in a RAID 0 array is dependent upon the chipset model. Please consult the specification for your chipset to determine the maximum number of drives supported in a RAID array.

RAID 1 (mirroring)

RAID level 1 combines two hard drives so that all data is copied concurrently across the array members that the RAID 1 volume resides on. In other words, the data is mirrored across the hard drives of the RAID 1 volume. This creates real-time redundancy of all data on the first drive, also called a mirror. RAID 1 is usually used in workstations and servers where data protection is important.
The RAID 1 volume appears as a single physical hard drive with a capacity equal to that of the smaller hard drive.

RAID 5 (striping with parity)	RAID level 5 combines three to six drives so that all data is divided into manageable blocks called strips. RAID 5 also stores parity, a mathematical method for recreating lost data on a single drive, which increases fault tolerance. The data and parity are striped across the array members. The parity is striped in a rotating sequence across the members. Because of the parity striping, it is possible to rebuild the data after replacing a failed hard drive with a new drive. However, the extra work of calculating the missing data will degrade the write performance to the volumes. RAID 5 performs better for smaller I/O functions than larger sequential files. RAID 5, when enabled with volume write-back cache with Coalescer, will enhance write performance. This combines multiple write requests from the host into larger more efficient requests, resulting in full stripe writes from the cache to the RAID5 volume. RAID 5 volume provides the capacity of (N-1) * smallest size of the hard drives, where N >= 3 and <=4. For example, a 3-drive RAID 5 will provide capacity twice the size of the smallest drive. The remaining space will be used for parity information.
RAID 10 (striping and mirroring)	RAID level 10 uses four hard drives to create a combination of RAID levels 0 and 1. The data is striped across a two-disk array forming a RAID 0 component. Each of the drives in the RAID 0 array is mirrored to form a RAID 1 component. This provides the performance benefits of RAID 0 and the redundancy of RAID 1. The RAID 10 volume appears as a single physical hard drive with a capacity equal to two drives of the four drive configuration (the minimum RAID 10 configuration). The space on the remaining two drives will be used for mirroring.

2.1.3 Typical Usage Model for RAID Levels

RAID 0	This provides end-users the performance necessary for any disk-intensive applications; these include video production and editing, image editing, and gaming applications.
RAID 1	This provides end-users with data redundancy by mirroring data between the hard drives.
RAID 5	This provides end-users with good performance and data redundancy by striping data and parity across all the hard drives. The write performance is enhanced with volume write-back cache.
RAID 10	This provides end-users with the benefits of RAID 0 (performance) and RAID 1 (data mirroring).

2.1.4 Supported Platforms for This Release

Intel® Rapid Storage Technology provides enhanced management capabilities and detailed status information for Serial ATA AHCI and RAID subsystems. Basic support for this release is on the following hardware components.

Note: some RST features are limited to hardware and/or OS versions and will be documented in this guide under each feature's requirements.

New platforms/chipsets

Chipset: Intel® Broadwell U (2+2) / Y (2+2) Premium
- Mobile Platform: Broadwell 1-Chip Premium
  - **SKU:** Broadwell WPT – LP Premium

Chipset: Intel® Broadwell U (2+2) / Y (2+2) Base
- Mobile Platform: Broadwell 1-Chip Base
  - **SKU:** Broadwell WPT – LP Base

- **Legacy Platforms/chipsets**

- Chipset: Intel® 9 Series Chipset Family SATA AHCI/RAID Controller
  - Mobile Platform: Shark Bay 2-chip / Haswell Refresh
    - **SKU:** HM97

- Chipset: Intel® 9 Series Chipset Family SATA AHCI/RAID Controller
  - Desktop Platform: Shark Bay 2-chip/Haswell refresh
    - **SKU**: Z97, H97

- Chipset: Intel® 8 Series/C220 Chipset Family (Lynx Point) SATA AHCI/RAID Controller
  - Mobile Platform: Shark Bay 1-chip
    - **SKU**: LPT-LP Mainstream*, LPT-LP Premium
  - Mobile Platform: Shark Bay 2-chip
    - **SKU**: QM87, HM87, HM86*
  - Desktop Platform: Shark Bay 2-chip
    - **SKU**: Q87, Z87, H87, Q85*, B85*, H81*
  - Workstation/Server Platform: Denlow (workstation/server)
    - **SKU**: C226

AHCI Mode Only

2.1.5 Supported Operating Systems for This Release

- Microsoft Windows* 8.1#
- Microsoft Windows* 8.1 x64
- Microsoft Windows* 8#
- Microsoft Windows* 8 x64
- Microsoft Windows* 7
- Microsoft Windows* 7 x64-bit Edition
- Microsoft Windows* Server 2008 R2 x64
- Microsoft Windows* Server 2012 x64-bit (All Editions)
- Microsoft Windows* Server 2012 R2 x64-bit (All Editions)
- Microsoft Windows* Multipoint Server 2011 x64

#- These OS versions pass validation testing, but are not WHQL certified.

2.1.6 Supported MSFT* Performance Debug Tools

Beginning with Intel® Rapid Storage Technology 13.0, Intel® RST Driver supports the MSFT* "Crimson" Event Tracing for Windows*(ETW) performance measurements for responsiveness. Please see MSFT* for information on this ETW.

3 Intel® Rapid Storage Technology Suite

The Intel® Rapid Storage Technology Suite contains these core components:

1. Intel® Rapid Storage Technology (Intel® RST) OS runtime software package:
    a. AHCI/RAID driver (and filter driver for backwards compatibility)
    b. Graphical User Interface (Intel® RST UI) , optional
    c. Event Monitor service (IAStorDataMgrSvc) optional; interfaces with:
        i. Intel® RST UI (graphical user interface)
        ii. Event Notification Tray Icon (IAStorIcon)
        iii. Windows system NT Event log
2. Intel® Rapid Storage Technology BIOS components:
    a. Intel® Rapid Storage Technology RAID Option ROM (legacy support)
    b. UEFI driver (with HII-compliant UI)

The following components are available for OEM manufacturing use only; NOT to be distributed to end-users!

3. Intel® Rapid Storage Technology RAID utilities
    a. Intel® RSTCLI 32/64-bit Windows/WinPE command line interface utilities (replaces RAIDCFG32/64 utilities)
    b. RcfgSata
        i. DOS-based command line interface utility (legacy support)
        ii. UEFI Shell-based command line interface utility
    c. RcmpSata compliance utility
        i. DOS-based Intel® RST RAID compliance check utility (legacy support)
        ii. UEFI Shell-based Intel® RST RAID compliance check utility

3.1 Intel® Rapid Storage Technology Software

The Intel® RST software is the major component of the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology Suite. The software includes the Intel® RST AHCI and RAID 32 and 64 bit drivers for supported Windows* operating systems. The driver supports several Intel® Serial ATA AHCI/RAID controllers and will recognize each unique device ID and sub-class code. Because of this, the driver must be installed before the Windows operating system is installed onto a RAID volume or a single SATA hard drive connected to the RAID controller. The driver, in conjunction with the Intel Rapid Storage Technology option ROM, will provide boot capability for all supported RAID levels. The driver, in conjunction with the Intel® RST UI, provides RAID volume management (create, delete, migrate, etc) within the Windows operating system. It also displays SATA* device and RAID volume information. Included with the software package is the RAID monitor service that monitors and reports various events of the storage subsystem.

3.2 Intel® Rapid Storage Technology Option ROM

The Intel® Rapid Storage Technology Option ROM is a standard Plug and Play option ROM that adds the Int13h services and provides a pre-OS user interface for the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology solution. The Int13h services allow a RAID volume to be used as a boot hard drive. They also detect any faults in the RAID volume being managed by the RAID controller. The Int13h services are active until the RAID driver takes over after the operating system is loaded.

The Intel Rapid Storage Technology option ROM expects a BIOS Boot Specification (BBS) compliant BIOS. It exports multiple Plug and Play headers for each non-RAID hard drive or RAID volume, which allows the boot order to be selected from the system BIOS's setup utility. When the system BIOS detects the RAID controller, the *RAID option ROM* code should be executed.

The Intel Rapid Storage Technology option ROM is delivered as a single uncompressed binary image compiled for the 16-bit real mode environment. To conserve system flash space, the integrator may compress the image for inclusion into the BIOS. System memory is taken from conventional DOS memory and is not returned.

3.3 Intel pre-OS RAID Configuration Utilities

The Intel RAID Configuration utility is an executable with capabilities similar to the Intel Rapid Storage Technology option ROM. Both Legacy OROM and UEFI configuration utilities can operate in 16-bit MS-DOS* mode. It provides customers with the ability to create, delete, and manage RAID volumes on a system within a DOS environment. For ease of use, the utility has command line parameters that make it possible to perform these functions by using DOS scripts or shell commands.

The RAID Configuration utilities use command line parameters. Below is a snapshot of the help text displayed when using the -? flag. It shows the usage for all supported command line flags necessary for creating, deleting, and managing RAID volumes.

3.3.1 RCfgSata Utility for MS-DOS* and UEFI

- Rcfgsata.exe = DOS application
- Rcfgsata.efi = UEFI application (UEFI shell required)

The command syntax for the Intel RAID Configuration utility is shown below:

==========

rcfgsata.efi (or rcfgsata.exe) [/?] [/Y] [/Q] [/C:vol_name] [/SS:strip_size]
[/L:raid_level] [/S:vol_size] [/DS:disk_id] [/D:vol_name] [/X] [/I] [/P] [/U]
[/ST] [/SP] [/V] [/RRT] [/Sync: <Auto | Manual>] [/M:disk_port] [/EM] [/ER]
[/ACCEL:vol_name1 cache_vol mode] [/RA] [/SD]

/? Displays Help Screen. Other options ignored.

/Y Suppress any user input. Used with options /C, /D, /SP & /X.

/Q Quiet mode / No output. Should not be used with status commands.

COMMANDS - Only one command at a time unless otherwise specified.

/C	Create a volume with the specified name. /S, /DS, /SS, & /L can be specified along with /C.
/SS	Specify strip size in KB. Only valid with /C.
/L	Specify RAID Level (0, 1, 10, or 5). Only valid with /C.
/S	Specify volume size in GB or percentage if a '%' is appended. Percentage must be between 1-100. Only valid with /C.
/DS	Selects the disks to be used in the creation of volume. List should be delimited by spaces.
/D	Delete Volume with specified name.
/X	Remove all metadata from all disks. Use with /DS to delete metadata from selected disks.
/I	Display All Drive/Volume/Array Information. /P can be specified.
/P	Pause display between sections. Only valid with /I or /ST.
/U	Do not delete the partition table. Only valid with /C on RAID 1 volumes.
/SP	Marks the selected drive(s) as spare(s). Use with /DS
/ST	Display Volume/RAID/Disk Status.
/V	Display version information
/RRT	Create a recovery volume. Only valid with /C. Requires /M.
/Sync	Set sync type for 'Recovery' volume. Only valid with /RRT.
/M	Specify the port number of the Master disk for 'Recovery' volume. Only valid with /RRT.
/EM	Enable only master disk for recovery volume
/ER	Enable only recovery disk for recovery volume; /EM and /ER actions will result in change from Continuous Update mode to On-Request.
/ACCEL	Specify the volume to accelerate and acceleration mode

vol_name1 - volume to accelerate

cache_vol - the volume to use as cache

mode - "enh" for enhanced, "max" - maximized

/RA Removes the Disk/Volume Acceleration.

/SD Synchronizes the data from the cache device to the Accelerated Disk/Volume.

==========

3.4 RSTCLI (32/64 bit) Windows Utilities

NOTE: RSTCLI Commands are CasE SenSitiVe

The Intel RSTCLI 32/64 utility is an executable. It provides OEMs with the ability to create, delete, and manage RAID volumes on a system within a windows environment using command line parameters that make it possible to perform these functions by using scripts or shell commands. For use in all supported Windows OS including WinPE 32/64.

The command syntax for the Intel RSTCLI utilities is shown below:

USAGE: rstcli.exe (or rstcli64.exe)

Create Options:

Flag	Name
-C	--create
-E	--create-from-existing
-l	--level
-n	--name
-s	--stripe-size
-z	--size
	--rrt
	--rrtMaster
	--rrtUpdate

Create Usage:
Creates a new volume and array or creates a new volume on an existing array.
--create --level x [--size y] [--stripe-size z] --name string [--create-from-existing diskId] diskId {[diskId]}

Create Examples:
-C -l 1 -n Volume 0-**1**-0-0 0-**2**-0-0 *(format of the disk ID is "0-**SATA_Port**-0-0" where the second digit from the left represents the SATA port on the platform where the disk is located; thus 0-**1**-0-0 represents SATA port # 1)*
--create -l 0 -z 5 --name RAID0Volume 0-3-0-0 0-4-0-0 0-5-0-0
-C -l 1 -E 0-1-0-0 -n VolumeWithData 0-2-0-0
-C --rrt -n RRTVolume 0-1-0-0 0-2-0-0 --rrtMaster 0-1-0-0
-C --rrt -n RRTVolume 0-1-0-0 0-2-0-0 --rrtUpdate Continuous
--create --help

Information Options:

Flag	Name
-I	--information
-a	--array
-c	--controller
-d	--disk
-v	--volume

Information Usage:
Displays disk, volume, array, and controller information.
--information --controller|--array|--disk|--volume {[device]}

Information Examples:
-I -v Volume
-I -d 0-5-0-0
--information --array Array_0000
--information --help

Manage Options:

Flag	Name
-M	--manage
-x	--cancel-verify
-D	--delete
-p	--verify-repair
-f	--normal-volume
-F	--normal
-i	--initialize
-L	--locate
-T	--delete-metadata
-Z	--delete-all-metadata**
-N	--not-spare
-P	--volume-cache-policy
-R	--rebuild
-S	--spare
-t	--target
-U	--verify
-w	--write-cache

****WARNING: Using this command deletes the metadata on ALL disks in the system. There is no option to select individual disks with this command and there is no warning prior to the command initiating and completing. To delete metadata on individual disks use the –D (--delete) command with either "volume_name" or "diskID".**

Manage Usage:
Manages arrays, volumes and disks present in the storage system.
--manage --cancel-verify volumeName
--manage --delete volumeName
--manage --verify-repair volumeName
--manage --normal-volume volumeName
--manage --normal diskId
--manage --initialize volumeName
--manage --locate diskId
--manage --delete-metadata diskId (deletes the metadata only on disks that are in a non-Normal state e.g. offline or unknown)
--manage --delete-all-metadata
--manage --not-spare diskId
--manage --volume-cache-policy off|wb --volume volumeName
--manage --rebuild volumeName --target diskId
--manage --spare diskId
--manage --verify volumeName
--manage --write-cache true|false --array arrayName

Manage Examples:
--manage --spare 0-3-0-0
-M -D VolumeDelete
-M --normal 0-2-0-0
--manage -w true -array Array_0000
-M -U VolumeVerify
-M -Z
--manage --help

Modify Options:

Flag	Name
-m	--modify
-A	--Add
-X	--expand
-l	--level
-n	--name
-s	--stripe-size
-v	--volume

Modify Usage:
Modifies an existing volume or array.
--modify --volume VolumeName --add diskId {[diskId]}
--modify --volume VolumeName --expand
--modify --volume VolumeName --level L [--add diskId {[diskId]} [--stripe-size s] [--name N]
--modify --volume VolumeName --name n

Modify Examples:
-m -v Volume_0000 -A 0-3-0-0 0-4-0-0
-m --volume ModifyVolume --level 5
--modify -v Volume -n RenameVolume
--modify --help

Accelerate Options:

Flag	Name
	--accelerate
	--createCache
	--setAccelConfig
	--disassociate
	--reset-to-available
	--accel-info
	--loadCache
	--stats

Accelerate Usage:
Accelerates a given disk or volume with the specified SSD disk.
--accelerate --createCache|--setAccelConfig|--disassociate|--reset-to-available|--accel-info
--accelerate --createCache --SSD <diskId> --cache-size **X** [where 16 ≤ **X** ≤ 64]
--accelerate --setAccelConfig --disk-to-accel <diskId> | --volume-to-accel <volume name> --mode [enhanced | maximized | off]
--accelerate --disassociate --cache-volume <volume name>
--accelerate --reset-to-available --cache-volume <volume name>
--accelerate --accel-info
--accelerate --loadCache <files or directory> --recurse
--accelerate --stats

Accelerate Examples:
--accelerate --createCache --SSD 0-3-0-0 --cache-size **X** [where 16 ≤ **X** ≤ 64]
--accelerate --setAccelConfig --disk-to-accel 0-5-0-0 --mode enhanced
--accelerate --setAccelConfig --volume-to-accel MyVolume --mode maximized
--accelerate --disassociate --cache-volume Cache_Volume
--accelerate --reset-to-available --cache-volume Cache_Volume
--accelerate --accel-info
--accelerate --loadCache C:\Windows*.* --recurse
--accelerate --stats
--accelerate --help

OPTIONS:

-A <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>, --add <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>
Adds new disks to an existing volume.

-a, --array
Lists information about the arrays in the storage system.

--accel-info
Lists information about Accelerate settings.

--accelerate

Accelerates a given disk or volume with the specified SSD disk.

-C, --create
Creates a new volume and array or creates a new volume on an existing array.

-c, --controller
Lists information about the controllers in the storage system.

--cache-size <MIN or MAX>
Sets a size in gigabytes for the cache memory. This is an optional switch. If the size is not specified, the complete size of the SSD will be used for acceleration.

--cache-volume <Volume name>
Specifies a name for the volume used as cache.

--createCache
Creates the cache.

-D <Volume name>, --delete <Volume name>
Deletes the specified volume.

-d, --disk
Lists information about the disks in the storage system.

--disassociate
Disassociates the Cache volume from acceleration

--disk-to-accel <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>
Specifies a disk if accelerating a pass-through disk.

--dynamic-storage-accelerator <true or false>
Enables/disables dynamic storage accelerator; using 'true' enables, 'false' disables.

-E <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>, --create-from-existing <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>
Identifies the disk if data is to be migrated from one of the disks. Disk identifier is SCSI address.

-F <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>, --normal <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>
Resets failed or SMART event disk to normal.

-f <Volume name>, --normal-volume <Volume name>
Resets failed RAID 0 volume to normal and recovers data.

-h, --help
Displays help documentation for command line utility modes, options, usage, examples, and return codes. When used with a mode switch (create, information, mange, modify, or accelerate), instructions for that mode display. For example, --create --help displays Create option help.

-I, --information
Displays disk, volume, array, and controller information.

-i <Volume name>, --initialize <Volume name>
Initializes the redundant data on a RAID 1, 5 or 10 volume.

-L <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>, --locate <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>
Locates device and blinks the LED.

-l <0, 1, 5, 10>, --level <0, 1, 5, 10>
Changes the Raid type of an existing volume. Options are migrations from RAID 1 to RAID 0 or 5, RAID 0 to RAID 5, and RAID 10 to RAID 5.

--loadCache C:\Windows*.* --recurse
Used to pre-load files into the cache

-M, --manage
Manages arrays, volumes and disks present in the storage system.

-m, --modify
Modifies an existing volume or array.

--mode <Enhanced or Maximized mode>
Specifies Accelerate mode as Enhanced or Maximized.

-N <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>, --not-spare <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>
Resets a spare disk to available.

-n <Volume name>, --name <Volume name>
Specifies a name for the volume created. Renames an existing volume in Modify mode.

-P <Volume name>, --volume-cache-policy <Volume name>
Sets volume cache policy to either off or wb.

-p <Volume name>, --verify-repair <Volume name>
Verifies and repairs the volume.

-q, --quiet
Suppresses output for create, modify, and manage modes. Not valid on info mode.

-R <Volume name>, --rebuild <Volume name>
Rebuilds the degraded volume.

-r, --rescan
Forces the system to rescan for hardware changes.

--reset-to-available
Resets the cache volume to available.

--rrt
Creates a recovery volume using Intel(R) Rapid Recovery Technology (RRT).

--rrtMaster <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>
Optionally creates a recovery volume that allows you to select a specific disk as the master disk. Default is the first disk in the disk list.

--rrtUpdate <Continuous or OnRequest Update>

Specifies a data update setting when creating a recovery volume as Continuous or OnRequest. Default is Continuous.

-S <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>, --spare <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>
Marks a disk as a spare.

--SSD <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>
Specifies SSD disk that will be used as cache. If another SSD is being used as cache, then that volume needs to be deleted to use a new SSD disk.

-s <size in KB>, --stripe-size <size in KB>
Sets a stripe size in kilobytes (2^10 bytes) for a volume. Valid when creating or changing the type of a volume and for RAID 0, RAID 5 and RAID 10. Options are 4, 8, 16, 32, 64 and 128 KB.

--setAccelConfig
Sets the config for accelerating a volume or disk.

--stats
Indicates percentage of cache usage.

-T <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>, --delete-metadata <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>
Deletes the metadata from the specified disk. (deletes the metadata only on disks that are in a non-Normal state e.g. offline or unknown)

-t <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>, --target <<host>-<bus>-<target>-<lun>>
Indicates the pass-through disk to be used for rebuilding a degraded volume.

-U <Volume name>, --verify <Volume name>
Verifies data on the volume.

-u <password>, --unlock <password>
Unlocks a disk.

-V, --version
Displays version information.

-v, --volume
Lists information about the volumes on the system. Stipulates the volume to act on when used in Modify or Manage mode.

--volume-to-accel <Volume name>
Specifies a name of the volume to be accelerated.

-w <true or false>, --write-cache <true or false>
Enables or disables write cache for all disks that are part of an array.

-X, --expand
Expands a volume to consume all available space in an array.

-x <Volume name>, --cancel-verify <Volume name>
Cancels a verify operation in progress.

-z <size in GB>, --size <size in GB>

Sets a size in gigabytes. This is an optional switch. If the size is not specified or specified to 0, then the maximum size available will be used.

-Z --delete-all-metadata
Deletes the metadata on **all disks** in the system without any warning prior to initiating and completing the action.

RETURN CODES:

0, Success
Request completed successfully.

1, Request Failed
Request is formatted correctly but failed to execute.

2, Invalid Request
Unrecognized command, request was formatted incorrectly.

3, Invalid Device
Request not formatted correctly, device passed in does not exist.

4, Request Unsupported
Request is not supported with the current configuration.

5, Device State Invalid
Request is not supported with the current device state.

20, Invalid Stripe Size
Stripe size is not supported.

21, Invalid Name
Volume name is too long, has invalid characters, or already exists.
Volume name cannot exceed 16 English characters.

22, Invalid Size
Size requested is invalid.

23, Invalid Number Disks
Number of disks requested is invalid.

24, Invalid RAID Level
RAID level requested is invalid.

3.5 UEFI System BIOS and the Intel® RST UEFI/RAID Package

Beginning with the Intel® RST 11.5 Release version, the product provides a native UEFI driver for OEMs and their BIOS vendors to integrate into their RAID-enabled platforms (Not required for AHCI mode platforms).

3.5.1 Specification References

This document is not intended to be a go-to document for the UEFI specification. The specification is owned by the UEFI working group and detailed information regarding UEFI can be found in documents published by that organization. The Intel® RST UEFI driver implementation conforms to the UEFI specification and is in compliance with version 2.3.1.

Table 3-1: UEFI Specifications and Location

Specification	Location
UEFI Specification version 2.3.1	(http://www.uefi.org/specsandtesttools)
UEFI Platform Initialization Specification version 1.2	(http://www.uefi.org/specsandtesttools)
UEFI Shell Specification version 2.0	(http://www.uefi.org/specsandtesttools)

3.5.2 What Intel® RST Provides to OEMs/BIOS Vendors

3.5.2.1 Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UEFI Driver

This is the main component of the Intel® RST pre-OS EFI solution. It is provided in three different formats:

RaidDriver.efi (filename):

- UEFI driver that requires integration into the UEFI System BIOS by the OEM's BIOS vendor. This file can be placed into the OEMs' UEFI BIOS source build where their tools can integrate it.

RaidDriver.ffs (filename):

- The Intel® RST UEFI driver (RaidDriver.efi) is wrapped in the Firmware File System (.ffs)
- Useful for an external tool to integrate the binary into a compiled BIOS image. Firmware File System Details:
  - Firmware File Type - EFI_FV_FILETYPE_DRIVER (0x07)
  - File GUID - 90C8D394-4E04-439C-BA55-2D8CFCB414ED
  - 2 Firmware File Sections
    - EFI_SECTION_PE32 (0x10)
    - EFI_SECTION_USER_INTERFACE (0x15)
      Name "SataDriver"

RaidDriver.bin (filename):

- This is an optional format that is provided to OEMs that might want it delivered as a PCI 3.0 UEFI OROM
- Disadvantage of the UEFI OROM format is that it likely will require the BIOS to have a Compatibility Support Module (CSM) in order to function

3.5.2.2 Intel® RST UEFI User Interface

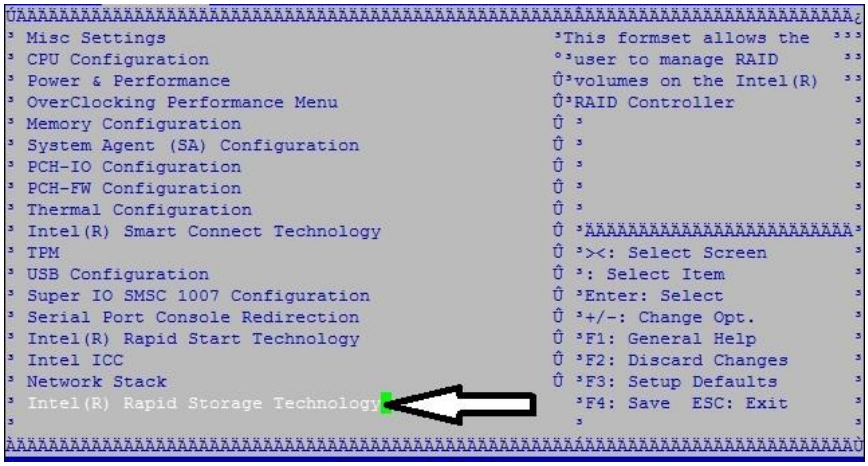
An **HII-compliant** user interface is provided for the pre-boot configuration of the RAID system, including management of Intel® Smart Response Technology. The same functionality provided in the legacy OROM UI is available in this UI.

- The UI is integrated within the UEFI driver binary (RaidDriver.efi, .ffs, and .bin files)
- Per the UEFI specification, we publish the UI as string and forms packages
- The UI is accessible from within the UEFI BIOS (How the user accesses it from within the BIOS is OEM-dependent upon implementation)
- The text string 'Intel(R) Rapid Storage Technology' will be displayed as the selection to enter the UI
- Some OEMs may want to hard assign where the Intel® RST UEFI GUI will be located within their BIOS.

- **The Intel® RST UEFI Driver FORMSET_GUID is:**

```
FORMSET_GUID { 0xd37bcd57, 0xaba1, 0x44e6, { 0xa9, 0x2c, 0x89, 0x8b,
0x15, 0x8f, 0x2f, 0x59 } }
{D37BCD57-ABA1-44e6-A92C-898B158F2F59}
```

Figure 1: Example location of RST UEFI UI in a System BIOS



3.5.2.3 Command line RAID Configuration Utility

RcfgSata.efi (filename):

- A UEFI application that requires booting to the UEFI Shell environment to run
- Same functionality and commands as have been provided by the legacy DOS version (***RcfgSata.exe***) in previous releases of the Intel® RST product.
- Requires the exact same version of the RST UEFI Driver to be loaded on system in order to function.

Figure 2: rcfgsata command line syntax

3.5.2.4 Command line RAID Compliance Checking Utility

RcmpSata.efi (filename):

- A UEFI application that requires booting to the UEFI Shell environment to run.
- Investigates if the list of UEFI required protocols by the RST UEFI Driver are present. Also provides a list of the protocols published by the RST UEFI Driver and the capabilities/features of the RST UEFI Driver.

Figure 3: rcfgsata command line syntax

3.5.3 UEFI System BIOS Requirements for Platform Compatibility with Intel® RST UEFI

This section covers what the OEM/BIOS Vendor is required to accomplish in order to ensure that the platform is compatible the Intel® RST UEFI driver.

3.5.3.1 Required Protocols/Functions to be Provided by the UEFI System BIOS

The Intel® RST UEFI driver requires the following protocols/functions to be provided by the BIOS:

EFI_BOOT_SERVICES:

- LocateHandleBuffer
- OpenProtocol
- CloseProtocol
- WaitForEvent
- HandleProtocol

- FreePool
- AllocatePages
- AllocatePool
- InstallMultipleProtocolInterfaces
- UninstallMultipleProtocolInterfaces
- Stall

EFI_RUNTIME_SERVICES:

- SetVariable
- GetVariable
- GetTime

Other Protocols:

- EFI_ACPI_TABLE_PROTOCOL (or EFI_ACPI_SUPPORT_PROTOCOL (EDK117))

3.5.3.2 Optional Protocols/Functions to be Provided by the UEFI System BIOS

If the OEM plans to use the Intel® RST HII-compliant UI, then **the following protocols/functions are required to be provided by the BIOS**:

- Form Browser 2 Protocol
- Config Routing Protocol
- HII String Protocol
- HII Database Protocol

3.5.3.3 Protocols Provided by the Intel® RST UEFI Driver

The Intel® RST UEFI driver provides the following protocols:

- *Driver Binding Protocol*
- *Component Name Protocol (English only)*
- *Component Name 2 Protocol (English only)*
- *Driver Supported EFI Version Protocol*
- *Device Path Protocol*
- *Config Access Protocol*
- EFI_BLOCK_IO_PROTOCOL
  - For Logical Devices
- EFI_STORAGE_SECURITY_PROTOCOL
  - For Non-RAID disks that support TCG Feature Set
- EFI_EXT_SCSI_PASS_THRU_PROTOCOL:
  - All SCSI commands are supported (for ATAPI devices)

- EFI_ATA_PASS_THRU_PROTOCOL:
  - Non-RAID disks:
    - All ATA commands are supported
  - RAID disks (only the following commands are supported):
    - EXECUTE DEVICE DIAGNOSTIC (0x90)
    - IDENTIFY DEVICE (0xEC)
    - IDLE (0xE3)
    - IDLE IMMEDIATE (0xE1)
    - SECURITY DISABLE PASSWORD (0xF6)
    - SECURITY ERASE PREPARE (0xF3)
    - SECURITY ERASE UNIT (0xF4)
    - SECURITY FREEZE (0xF5)
    - SECURITY SET PASSWORD (0xF1)
    - SECURITY UNLOCK (0xF2)
    - SET FEATURES (0xEF)
    - SMART READ DATA (0xB0 / 0xD0)
    - SMART READ LOG (0xB0 / 0xD5)
    - SMART RETURN STATUS (0xB0 / 0xDA)
    - STANDBY (0xE2)
    - STANDBY IMMEDIATE (0xE0)
  - All disk types:
    - EFI_ATA_PASS_THRU_PROTOCOL_ATA_NON_DATA
    - EFI_ATA_PASS_THRU_PROTOCOL_PIO_DATA_IN
    - EFI_ATA_PASS_THRU_PROTOCOL_PIO_DATA_OUT
    - EFI_ATA_PASS_THRU_PROTOCOL_DEVICE_DIAGNOSTIC
    - EFI_ATA_PASS_THRU_PROTOCOL_UDMA_DATA_IN
    - EFI_ATA_PASS_THRU_PROTOCOL_UDMA_DATA_OUT
    - EFI_ATA_PASS_THRU_PROTOCOL_RETURN_RESPONSE

3.5.4 How-to-Enable the Platform with Intel® RST UEFI Driver/HII_GUI

This section covers what the OEM/BIOS Vendor is required to accomplish in order to ensure that the platform is compatible with the Intel® RST UEFI driver.

3.5.4.1 Step1: Platform UEFI BIOS

1. Ensure that the UEFI System BIOS meets UEFI Specification 2.3.1 compliance
2. The BIOS must provide the following protocols:
   - EFI_Boot_Services Protocols (see section 3.5.3.1)

- EFI_Runtime_Services Protocols (see section 3.5.3.1)
- EFI_HII Protocols** (see section 3.5.3.2) *** Required for the Intel® RST UEFI UI

3.5.4.2 Step2: Download and Integrate the Intel® RST UEFI Package

1. Download the latest kit from the Intel VIP (Validation Internet Portal) website. From the kit select the ***efi_sata.zip*** file which will contain the UEFI driver binary files (*RaidDriver.efi, RaidDriver.ffs, and RaidDriver.bin*)
2. Select and extract the binary file based on the planned integration method:
   - *RaidDriver****.efi***: Use this binary if planning to integrate at the time of the BIOS image build
   - *RaidDriver****.ffs***: Use this binary if planning to integrate into an already built BIOS image
   - *RaidDriver****.bin***: Use this binary if planning to integrate as legacy type OROM (CSM may also be required)
3. Use the proper integration tools based on the binary file selected above

3.5.4.3 Step3: Verify Compliance

1. From the ***efi_sata.zip*** downloaded in step 2, extract the ***RCmpSata.efi*** file.
2. Place the file on a USB thumb drive and insert the drive into the platform
3. Boot to the UEFI Shell environment.
4. Run the RCmpSata.efi application (it's a command line utility): at the prompt type the command:
   - To print to screen: ***`rcmpsata.efi`***
   - To print to a file: ***`rcmpsata.efi > comply.txt`***
5. Ensure all sections pass with no fails reported

3.5.5 Known Compatibility Issues with the UEFI Self Certification Test (UEFI SCT) tool

The following UEFI 2.3.1 SCT tests will appear as FAIL in reports generated using the "Report Generation" tool of the SCT framework. The "Report Generation" tool is the only method that should be used to determine if tests fail. Do not determine test

failing test results by viewing the raw log files. The "Report Generation" tool will discard any test results that failed due to an invalid system configuration.

3.5.5.1 Bootable Image Support Test\Block IO Protocol Test

EFI_BLOCK_IO_PROTOCOL.Reset - Reset() returns EFI_SUCCESS with ExtendedVerification being TRUE

- *Test Index*: 5.7.5.1.1
- *Test GUID*: 61EE3A34-62A2-4214-B076-5073B177156C
- *Reason*: The Intel® RST UEFI driver does not support Reset – EFI_UNSUPPORTED is returned.

EFI_BLOCK_IO_PROTOCOL.Reset - Reset() returns EFI_SUCCESS with ExtendedVerification being FALSE

- *Test Index*: 5.7.5.1.2
- *Test GUID*: 98530F3D-8BD8-44A1-9D06-08039FDFEC63
- *Reason*: The Intel® RST UEFI driver does not support Reset – EFI_UNSUPPORTED is returned.

EFI_BLOCK_IO_PROTOCOL.ReadBlocks - ReadBlocks() returns EFI_SUCCESS with valid parameter

- *Test Index*: 5.7.5.2.1
- *Test GUID*: 9EFE26C2-C565-478A-A0B4-05A8FD2E7E3E
- *Reason*: Test called ReadBlocks() with a BufferSize of 0 so EFI_BAD_BUFFER_SIZE is returned. The UEFI 2.3.1 specification states for ReadBlocks, "The size of the Buffer in bytes. This must be a multiple of the intrinsic block size of the device."

3.5.5.2 ATA Bus Support Test\ATA Pass-Thru Protocol Test

EFI_ATA_PASS_THRU_PROTOCOL.BuildDevicePath - call BuildDevicePath with NULL DevicePath.

- *Test Index*: 5.7.8.2.1
- *Test GUID*: D72E6A78-5292-4493-9040-B0445A9C1714
- *Reason*: The Intel® RST UEFI driver does not support BuildDevicePath – EFI_UNSUPPORTED is returned

EFI_ATA_PASS_THRU_PROTOCOL.BuildDevicePath - call BuildDevicePath with invalid Port.

- *Test Index*: 5.7.8.2.2
- *Test GUID*: A42A0E01-7B80-46E4-A757-86C4EC53F4E4
- *Reason*: The Intel® RST UEFI driver does not support BuildDevicePath – EFI_UNSUPPORTED is returned

EFI_ATA_PASS_THRU_PROTOCOL.BuildDevicePath - call BuildDevicePath with invalid PortMultiplierPort

- *Test Index*: 5.7.8.2.3
- *Test GUID*: 322F00C1-F6BF-41ED-AEFD-AAC48F3FA9DB
- *Reason*: The Intel® RST UEFI driver does not support BuildDevicePath – EFI_UNSUPPORTED is returned

EFI_ATA_PASS_THRU_PROTOCOL.BuildDevicePath BuildDevicePath() with available device, device path

- *Test Index*: 5.7.8.2.4
- *Test GUID*: 230D44B6-CE53-42B6-9BA6-3D115D492B33 should be created.
- *Reason*: The Intel® RST UEFI driver does not support BuildDevicePath – EFI_UNSUPPORTED is returned

EFI_ATA_PASS_THRU_PROTOCOL.GetDevice GetDevice() with NULL device path.

- *Test Index*: 5.7.8.3.1
- *Test GUID*: 0F2F0849-690B-48EA-8E35-64363FAA8C5C
- *Reason*: The Intel® RST UEFI driver does not support GetDevice – EFI_UNSUPPORTED is returned

3.5.5.3 HII Test\HII Config Access Protocol Test

HII_CONFIG_ACCESS_PROTOCOL.RouteConfig - RouteConfig() returns EFI_NOT_FOUND if no target was

- *Test Index*: 5.18.6.2.3
- *Test GUID*: 1F99EBC8-0253-455F-88AC-9E2BA6DCD729 found with the routing data.
- *Reason*: Intel® RST UEFI driver does not support RouteConfig – EFI_UNSUPPORTED is returned. RouteConfig is not supported so that Intel® RST HII form values are only modified by the Intel® RST driver itself.

4 Intel Rapid Storage Technology for PCIe Storage

Beginning with the Intel® RST 13.0 Release version, PCIe storage devices are supported on the following SKUs:

PCH SKU	PCH Family	Segment
H97	LPT-H	Refresh Desktop
Z97	LPT-H	Refresh Desktop

4.1.1 OEM System BIOS Requirements

System BIOS	System BIOS must enable remapping for the device to be supported by RST(consult the Intel BIOS Writers Guide for your platform)

4.1.2 General Requirements

Hardware	Only enabled on specific SKUs of the Haswell Refresh platforms. Remapping must be enabled on the platform. (Refer the Product Design guide for the respective platforms).
Operating System	All x64 bit supported Operating Systems for this release
Supported Devices	AHCI PCIe Devices
SATA Mode	RAID Only

4.1.3 Warnings

4.1.3.1 Features Limitations

Intel® Rapid Storage Technology 13.1 for PCIe Storage Devices will not support the following features:

- Legacy AHCI DEVSLP
- L1.2 Support for PCIe devices is not supported until 13.5 release
- RTD3
- Hot Plug
- InstantGo*

4.1.3.2 PCIe Device Usage Model

Intel® Rapid Storage Technology PCIe Device storage is limited to the following usages:

- As a single Pass-Thru Bootable device with controller in RAID mode.
- As a cache device for Intel® Smart Response Technology with controller in RAID mode.

4.1.4 Intel Rapid Storage Technology for PCIe Storage Use cases

Prerequisite:

- The chipset must have the remapping hardware.
- The BIOS must implement the remapping logic and turn it on.
- The PCIe Storage device must be attached to remapable PCIe slot or PCIe M.2 connector.
- The PCIe Storage device must be AHCI-controller based.
- System must be in RAID mode.
- The system BIOS must include the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UEFI driver*.

If any of the above conditions are not met, the PCIe SSD will not be recognized by the RST driver.

*No Legacy OROM support

Reference documents: For detailed use case information refer to RST13.0 Use case document ID 539242 published on CDI

Use Cases:

Use Case	Description	Boot Support
Using PCIe Storage device as a pass-through device	When all the prerequisites referred above are met,	RAID

	the PCIe Storage device can be used as a pass-through device. It can be a boot device or a data device.	
Turn on SRT, using PCIe Storage device to accelerate SATA HDD	When all the prerequisites referred above are met and all conditions to enable SRT are met, SRT can be turned on to use the PCIe Storage device as the cache device to accelerate the SATA HDD. *Refer to section on SRT	RAID

4.1.5 Intel® Customer Reference Board BIOS Settings

The following settings can be used on Intel® Customer Reference Boards (CRB) that support remapping. Please consult with your BIOS vendor for compatible settings for Intel® RST PCIe storage.

BIOS Settings using the EDISTO BEACH FAB 4 SKU-2 SDIO WIFI card with PCIe SSD connected

1. Enter into Bios set-up and choose the below settings:
    a. Intel Advanced Menu->PCI Subsystem Settings->Install Ext OpRom Before BIOS = "Ext PCIe Both Storage and Other OpRom"
    b. Intel Advanced Menu -> SA Configuration->X2APICOPTOUT = Disabled
    c. Intel Advanced Menu -> SA Configuration-> VT-d = disabled
    d. Intel Advanced Menu-> PCH-IO Configuration->PCI Express Configuration->PCI Express Root Port 6->PCIe Speed = Gen1
    e. Intel Advanced Menu->PCH-IO Configuration->SATA Configuration->SATA Mode Selection = RAID
    f. Intel Advanced Menu->PCH-IO Configuration-> SATA Configuration ->PCIe Nand Configuration = Enabled
    g. Intel Advanced Menu->PCH-IO Configuration->PCI Express Configuration->PCIe Nand Port Selection = Port 6
    h. Intel Advanced Menu->PCH-IO Configuration->SATA Configuration->EFI RAID = Enabled
    i. Boot Maintenance Manger Menu->boot configuration Menu->CSM control = Always On
2. Restart the SUT to reflect the setting in BIOS
3. Enter into Bios and navigate to TVP Device manager-> Check for the PCIe NAND SSD

4.1.6 Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UEFI Compliance Utitlity for PCIe Storage

Beginning with Intel® RST UEFI version 13.0, the RcmpSata.efi utility includes the ability to test Intel® RST PCIe conformance for OEMs and ODMs in the UEFI shell (RcmpSata.efi)or DOS environment (RcmpSata.exe).

**RcmpSata utility is also available in earlier releases for Legacy OROM and UEFI compliance testing in the Pre-OS environment (see section 3.5.2.4).*

With the RcmpSata.efi utility downloaded to a Fat32 formatted usb drive attached to the platform, the following syntax can be used in the UEFI shell to download compliance data to a text file for viewing in a text editor (where '#' is the file system number of the usb drive shown when booting to the UEFI shell):

Fs#:> rcmpsata.efi > rcmpsata.txt

You may scroll through the text file in the UEFI shell by typing the following command:

Fs#:>edit rcmpsata.txt

The final test results are displayed at the end. Test Section 16 will confirm "remap" for PCIe is enabled/disabled for debugging issues in the Pre-OS environment.

```
  EFI Editor  0.99      rcmpsata.txt                UNICODE
  7.19 CAP.SIS and PxCMD.ISP Agreement:                                  PASS
  7.21 HBA Capabilities Ext. Supports DEVSLP:                         DISABLED
  7.22 HBA Capabilities Ext. Supports ADM:                            DISABLED
  7.23 HBA Capabilities Ext. Enabled DESO:                            DISABLED

 16.1  Remap ACPI Table:                                              ENABLED
       Remap ACPI table isValid:                                           1
       Remap dev's vendorId:                                          0x144D
       Remap dev's deviceId:                                          0x1600
       Remap dev's classCode:                                          0x106
       Remap dev's remapOffset:                                       0x4000
       Remap dev's linkSpeed:                                              2
       Remap dev's linkWidth:                                              2
       PCH AHCI Controller BAR:                                   0x90430000
 16.2  Cycle Router Enabled:                                          ENABLED
       GCR.Raw:                                                       0xB0041
 16.3  PCIe Memory BAR Remapped:                                      ENABLED

17. FFS Tests

       RstCacheMpb Protocol:                                             WARN
 17.1  RstCacheMpbProtocol Discovery:                                DISABLED


Number of successes: 32, Number of warnings: 0, Number of failures: 0
Total tests: 73
  Row: 266  Col: 1
F1  Go To Line      F2  Save File       F3  Exit           F4  Search
F9  File Type  ace  F6  Cut Line        F7  Paste Line     F8  Open File
```

5 Using Dynamic Storage Accelerator (DSA)

Beginning with the Intel® RST 12.0 Release version, DSA feature is supported.

5.1.1 OEM System BIOS Vendors' Requirements

System BIOS

System BIOS must include the ACPI method GLTS (Get Dynamic Storage Accelerator Status) implemented (consult the Intel BIOS Writers Guide for your platform)

The default is 'Off'; it must be set to 'On' to enable DSA.

5.1.2 General Requirements

Hardware

Only enabled on specific SKUs of the Intel® 8 / 9 Series chipset platforms:

- QM87
- HM87, HM97
- Q87
- Z87, Z97
- C226

With Core™ branded CPUs.

Operating System

All supported Operating Systems for this release 131

Figure 3.6.1.1 RST UI Performance Page

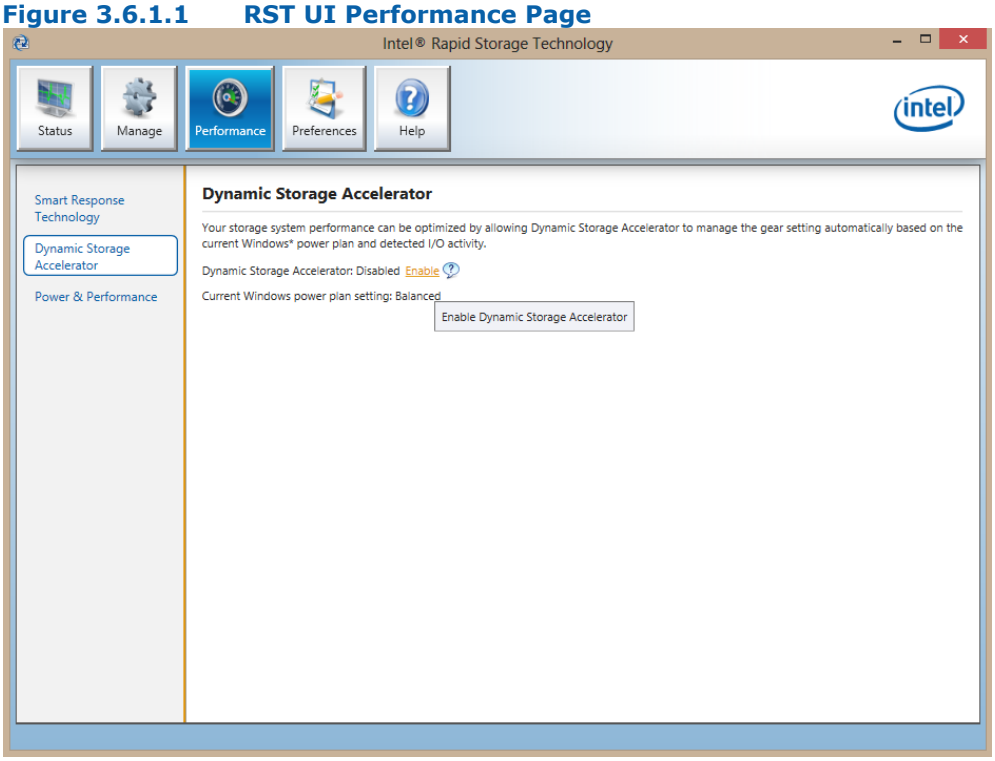
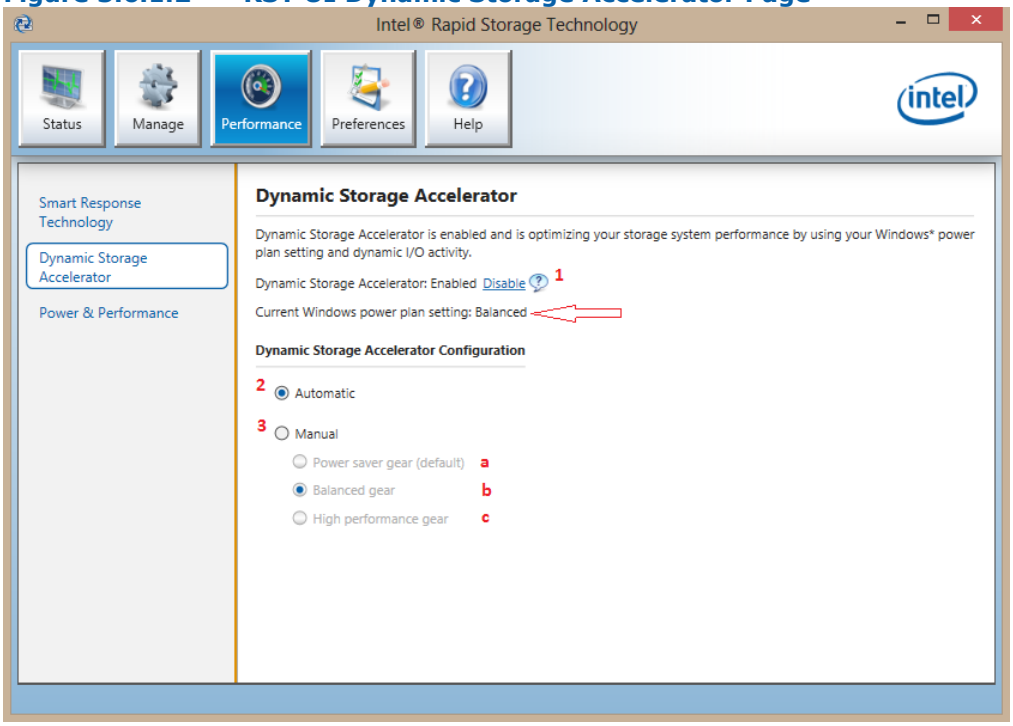


Figure 3.6.1.2 RST UI Dynamic Storage Accelerator Page



5.1.3 Configuring DSA

Beginning with RST 13.0 the default configuration setting for DSA is "Automatic".

Settings The feature can be configured on one of two modes:

1. **Automatic (Default mode)**: Dynamic Storage Accelerator is enabled and is optimizing your system's CPU C-state by using the Windows* Power plan setting and the dynamic I/O activity detected on the system when in DC mode and will go high performance gear when in AC mode.

2. **Manual**: Dynamic Storage Accelerator is enabled and will operate in one of three 'gears' that you set regardless of the Windows power plan setting.

Automatic To set the DSA feature to automatic mode:

1. Open the RST UI in Windows (you must be logged in as Administrator)
2. Click on the '**Performance**' button at the top menu of the UI
3. In the left navigation menu of the page, select "Dynamic Storage Accelerator" if it is not the default.
4. In the main pane of the page select the 'Automatic' radial button (this is the default selection when the feature is enabled)

Manual To set the DSA feature into one of the three gear settings:

1. Open the RST UI in Windows (you must be logged in as Administrator)
2. Click on the '**Performance**' button at the top menu of the UI
3. In the left navigation menu of the page, select "Dynamic Storage Accelerator" if it is not the default
4. In the main pane of the page select the 'Manual' radial button. Now you can select one of the following three gears based on your system needs:

    a. Power saver gear
    b. Balanced gear
    c. High performance gear

Disable To disable the feature and use the Windows power plan setting, you can click the Disable link near the top of the page (Item labeled '1' in figure 3.6.1.2).

5.1.4 Configuring DSA using Intel® RSTCLI 32/64 Windows* Utilities

The RSTCLI 32/64 utilities support the enable or disable of DSA in the manufacturing environment. These utilities do not support any other DSA configuration options; DSA configuration must be performed from the RST UI Dynamic Storage Accelerator Page.

Enable Usage:

```
rstcli.exe --dynamic-storage-accelerator true
```

Disable Usage:

```
rstcli.exe --dynamic-storage-accelerator false
```

6 How to Enable the Platform for Intel® RST Support of BIOS Fast Boot

Beginning with the Intel® RST 12.0 Release version, Intel® RST implements pre-OS UEFI driver and Windows runtime driver support for the platform BIOS Fast Boot specification.

6.1.1 OEM System BIOS Vendors' Requirements

This section covers what the OEM's system BIOS vendor must provide in order for the Intel® RST Fast Boot BIOS implementation to be enabled on the platform.

System BIOS

The Intel® RST UEFI driver requires the following BIOS components:

- 2KB of non-volatile UEFI variable storage with access from runtime and as a boot service
- Access to UEFI Hand-off Block Hand-off Info Table (PHIT HOB) to determine boot mode
    - BOOT_WITH_FULL_CONFIGURATION = Fast-Boot disabled
    - BOOT_WITH_MINIMAL_CONFIGURATION = Fast-Boot enabled
    - BOOT_ON_S4_RESUME = Fast-Boot enabled

6.1.2 Supported System Configurations

This section covers the system configurations that are required for the Intel® RST BIOS Fast Boot implementation to support the platform's BIOS Fast Boot specification.

System BIOS

SATA controller must be set to RAID mode

HW Configuration

Any of the following configurations are supported:

1. Platform configured with a single pass-through SSD or PCIe storage device (system boot drive)
2. Platform configured with a single SSD/mSATA + 2 HHD's as a RAID 1 (system boot drive), Accelerated with Intel® Smart Response Technology*
3. Platform configured with a single SSD/mSATA + single HDD

(system boot drive), Accelerated with Intel® Smart Response Technology*

Note: ATAPI devices do not affect BIOS Fast Boot specification

*Fast Boot will not be supported on configurations where the PCIe Storage device is used as the cache disk.

Operating System

- Windows 8.1 64
- Windows 8 64
- Windows 7 64

7 Creating a RAID Volume

RAID volumes can be created three different ways. The method most widely used by end-users is to use the Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI in Windows*. The second method to create a RAID volume is to use the Intel Rapid Storage Technology option ROM user interface (or the Intel® RST pre-OS UEFI HII UI). The third way, used by OEMs only, is using the pre-OS RCfgSata or Windows (including WinPE) RSTCLI 32/64 utilities.

7.1 Using the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UI

1. Run the Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI from the following Start menu link within Windows:

   Pre-Windows* 8
   Start→Programs→Intel Control Center (optional) ->Intel® Rapid Storage Technology→Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI
   Windows* 8 and Newer
   ****The UI is not added to the Start Window upon installation and must be added manually***
   File Explorer->Local Disk(C)->Program Files->Intel->Intel® Rapid Storage Technology->IAStorUI.exe (right click and pin to start)

2. Based on the available hardware and your computer's configuration, you may be able to create a volume by selecting the 'easy to use' options such as 'Protect data' under 'Status', or by selecting a volume type under 'Create'. Based on the number of non RAID disks available to you and the size of the disks the user will only be able to see the possible volume creation options... (e.g. if you have only two disks ...you can only see options to create RAID 0, RAID1 and Recovery(Intel® RRT) ; if you have three disks, you can only see options for creating RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID5 and Recovery)

   NOTE: To create a volume the user must be in admin mode and the system must be in RAID Ready mode with two or more hard disks connected to it

3. Instructions to create a volume by selecting volume type under 'Create'

   a. After selecting the volume type to create, click on 'Next'

   b. Now configure the volume by providing the volume name, selecting the hard disks to be part of the volume and strip size if applicable

      NOTE: When configuring a volume, the application will only list the disks that meet the min requirements to be part of the volume. Based on the first disk selected or the order of selection, some disks may become grayed out if one or more requirements are not met. Changing the order of selection generally helps re-enable disks that were grayed out. For Ex: If the first selection is a system disk, only disks that are of equal or greater size will be presented for selection

and other remains grayed out. For more information on disk requirements refer 'creating a volume' under help file in the UI.

c. Once the disks are selected for volume creation, the user will presented with option, if you want preserve data on which selected disk. Click on 'Next' and select the 'Create Volume' button.

4. After the RAID volume is created, you will be shown a dialog box stating that the RAID volume was successfully created and you will you will need to use Windows Disk Management or other third-party software to create a partition within the RAID volume and format the partition. Click OK to close this dialog box.

5. After formatting the partition, you may begin to copy files to, or install software on, the RAID volume.

7.2 Using the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology Legacy Option ROM User Interface

1. Upon re-boot, you will see the option ROM status message on the screen – press CTRL-I to enter the Intel Rapid Storage Technology option ROM user interface.

2. In the Main Menu, select option #1 'Create RAID Volume'. Enter the name you want to use for the RAID volume, then press Enter.

3. Select the RAID level by using the arrow keys, then press Enter.

4. Press Enter to select the disks to be used by the array that the volume will be created on. Press Enter when done.

5. Select the strip size (128 KB is the default for RAID 0) by using the arrow keys, then press Enter when done.

6. Enter the size for the RAID volume in gigabytes. The default value will be the maximum size. If you specify a smaller size, you will be able to create a second volume in the remaining space using the same procedure.

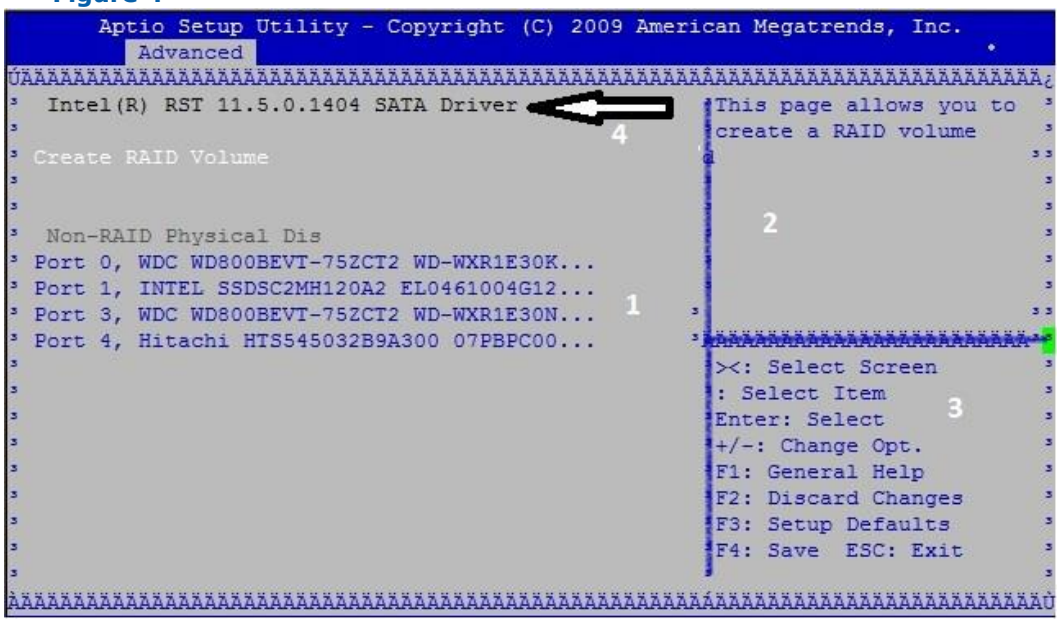
7. After this is done, exit the Option ROM user interface.

7.3 Using the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UEFI User Interface

Note: This section is OEM dependent. Where/how the OEM chooses to implement the UEFI UI is based on OEM preference

1. Upon re-boot, launch the Intel® RST UEFI user interface (HII compliant)

Figure 4

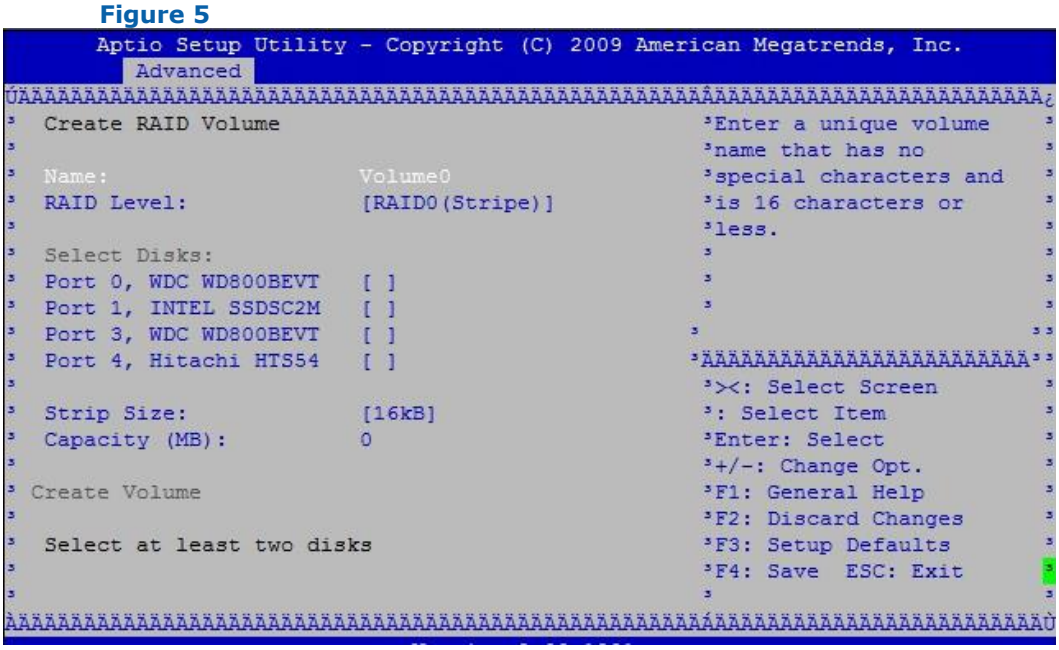


The UEFI UI is divided into three main sections:

1. Section 1 is the main section.
    a. It displays RAID configuration and status information
    b. It displays RST UEFI driver version (see arrow #4 in figure above)
    c. It displays physical devices enumerated by the RST UEFI driver that are not part of the RAID volume
2. Section 2 gives a brief description of current page of the UI
3. Section 3 gives information on how to navigate within the current page of the UEFI UI. ***Note: this section is not implemented by the RST UEFI driver and is specific to the BIOS that was used for documentation purposes.***

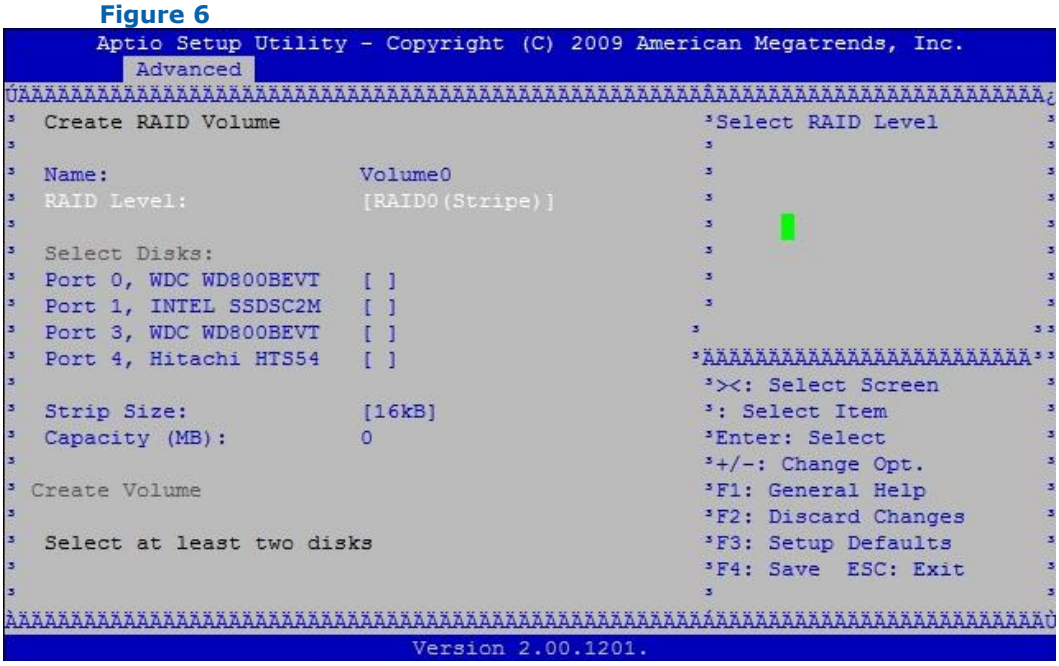
2. In the Main Menu, select 'Create RAID Volume'
    a. Enter the name you want to use for the RAID volume, then press <Enter>.

Figure 5



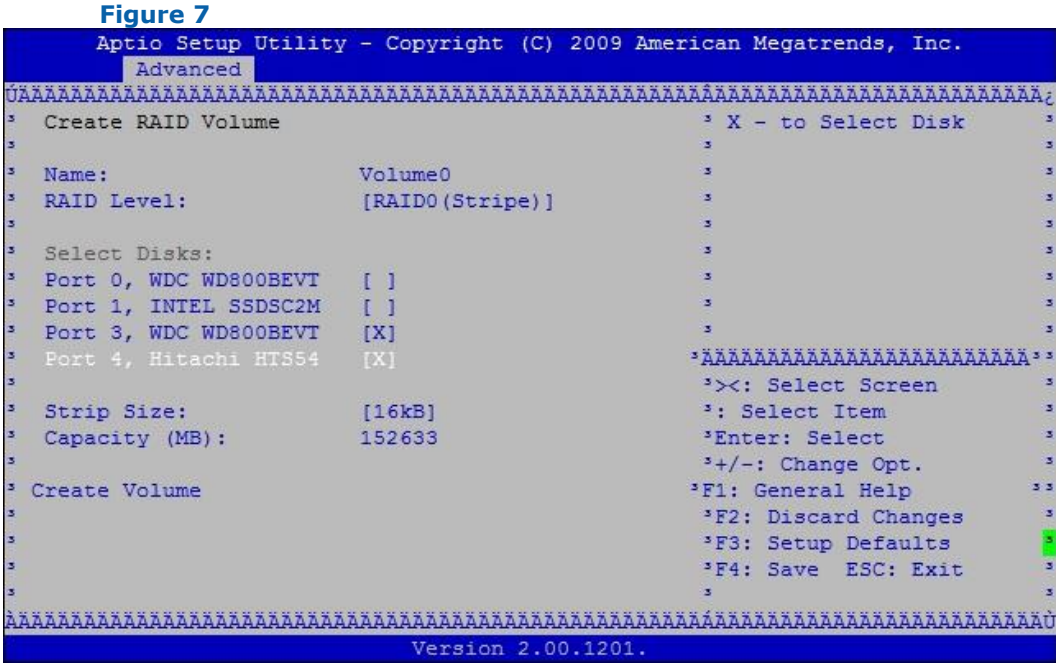
b. Scroll down to 'RAID Level" and press <Enter> to select a RAID level

Figure 6



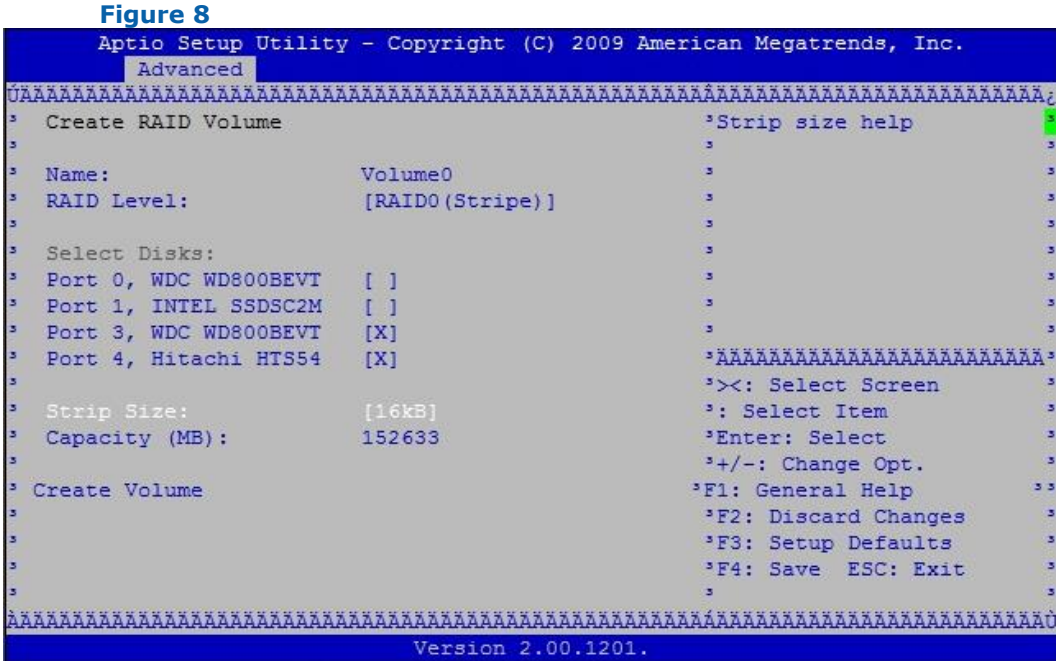
c. Scroll down to 'Select Disks' and at each disk that you wish to include in the RAID volume press <space bar>

Figure 7



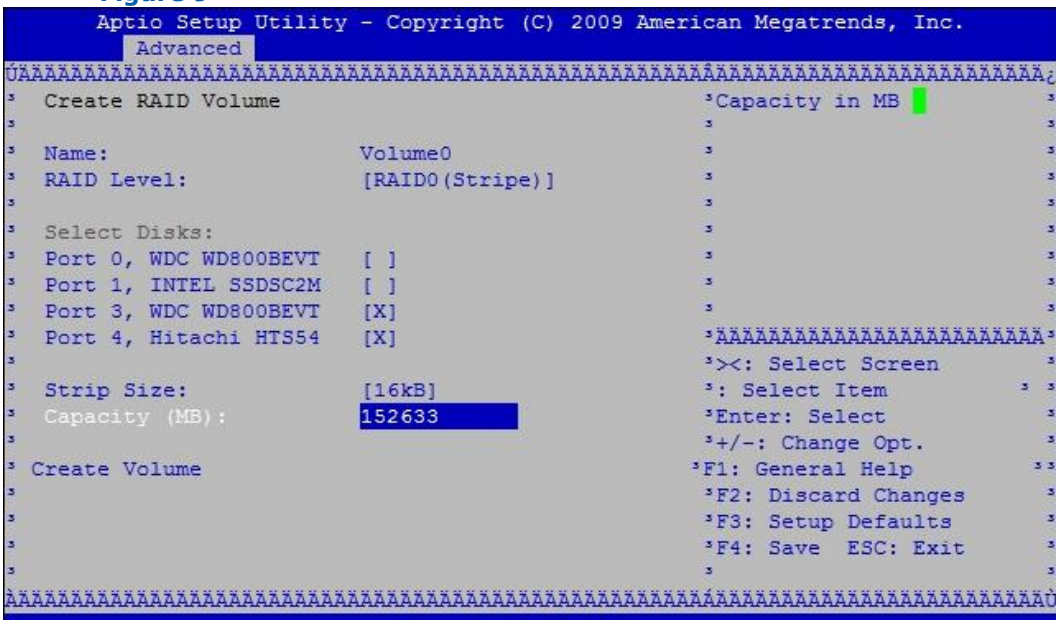
d. Next scroll down to 'Strip Size' and press <enter> to select a Strip size or continue if you wish to use the default strip size

Figure 8



e. Next scroll down to 'Capacity (MB)' where the maximum capacity is selected and displayed in MB. To select a smaller capacity for the RAID volume, type in the size in MB that you wish to use

Figure 9

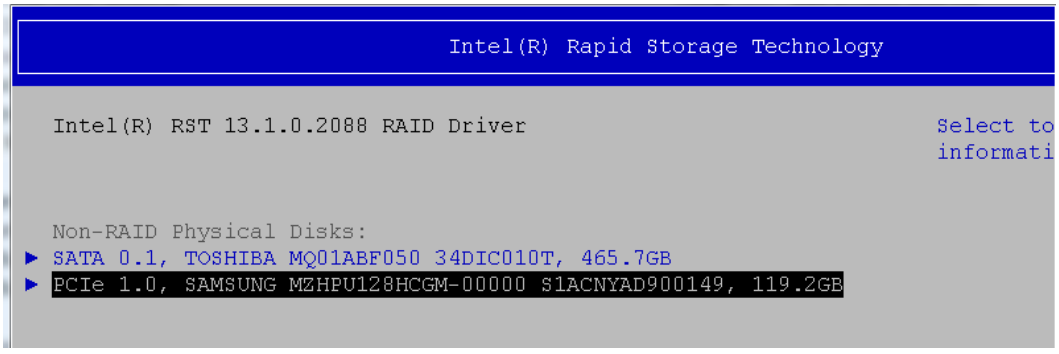


f. Next scroll down to 'Create Volume' and press <Enter>

3. After this is done, exit the Intel® RST UEFI UI.

Note: The "Create Volume" action will only be enabled if the RAID volume options selected will result in a valid configuration.

4. Changes in HII, Beginning with Intel® RST UEFI 13.0, for PCIe Devices include new labeling for Devices and multiple controller management ability.
   - Device Ids numbering scheme = <Device Type><Controller ID>"."<Device ID>
   - Example below: "PCIe 1.0"



7.4 Using the RAID Configuration Utilities (DOS, UEFI Shell, and Windows)

Note: rstcli and rstcli64 can be used interchangeably below.

Run "rcfgsata.exe in DOS environment (or rcfgsata.efi from UEFI shell) or "rstcli.exe (or rstcli64.exe)" (Windows environment) with the following command line flags to create a RAID volume.

The following command line will instruct the utility to create a RAID 0 volume named "OEMRAID0" on hard drives attached to the SATA Controller (Controller #0) on Port 0 and 1 with a strip size of 128 KB and a size of 120 GB:

```
C:\>rcfgsata.exe(or rcfgsata.efi) /C OEMRAID0 /DS 0.0 0.1 /SS 128 /L
0 /S 120

C:\>rstcli.exe –C –l 0 –n OEMRAID 0-0-0-0 0-1-0-0 –s 128 –z 120
```

The following command will create a RAID volume using all of the default values. It will create a RAID 0 volume with a strip size of 128 KB on the two hard drives in the system. The volume will be the maximum size allowable.

```
C:\>rcfgsata.exe /C OEMRAID0 (requires that only two disks can be
attached to the system)
```

The following command line will display usage for all support command line parameters:

```
C:\>rcfgsata.exe(or rcfgsata.efi) /?
C:\>rstcli.exe --help
```

Note: Selecting the strip size is only applicable for RAID 0, RAID 5, RAID 10 levels. Strip size is not applicable for RAID 1.

8 Deleting a RAID Volume

RAID volumes can be deleted in three different ways. The method most widely used by end-users is the Windows user interface utility. The second method is to use the Intel Rapid Storage Technology Option ROM user interface. The third way, used by OEMs only, uses the RAID Configuration utility.

8.1 Using the Windows User Interface Utility

1. Run the Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI from the following Start menu link:

   Start→All Programs→Intel® Rapid Storage Technology →Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI

2. Under 'Status' or 'Manage' Click on the volume you want to delete. The user will be presented with the volume properties on the left.

3. Click on 'Delete volume'

4. Review the warning message, and click 'Yes' to delete the volume.

5. The 'Status' page refreshes and displays the resulting available space in the storage system view. You can now use it to create a new volume.

8.2 Using the Option ROM User Interface

1. Upon re-boot, you will see the Intel Rapid Storage Technology option ROM status message on the screen – press CTRL-I to enter the option ROM user interface.

2. Within this UI, select option #2 'Delete RAID volume'.

3. You should be presented with another screen listing the existing RAID volume.

4. Select the RAID volume you wish to delete using the up and down arrow keys.

5. Press the Delete key to delete the RAID volume

6. Press Y to confirm.

Note: Option #3 'Reset Hard Drives to Non-RAID' in the option ROM user interface may also be used to delete a RAID volume. This resets one or more drives to non-RAID status, by deleting all metadata on the hard drives. This has the affect of deleting any RAID volumes present. This function is provided for re-setting the hard drives when there is a mismatch in RAID volume information on the hard drives. The option #2 'Delete RAID Volume' on the contrary, will allow deleting a volume at a time, while retaining the existing RAID array metadata (for instance Matrix RAID).

8.3 Using the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UEFI User Interface

Note: This section is OEM dependent. Where/how the OEM chooses to implement the UEFI UI is based on OEM preference. Use the following example for Intel CRB.

1. Upon re-boot, enter the system BIOS and select the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology menu for the UEFI user interface
2. In the Main Menu, go to the 'RAID Volumes' section, highlight the volume to be deleted and press <Enter>
    a. Select 'Delete', then press <Enter>.
    b. At the dialogue box press <Enter> to confirm the deletion of the volume (**Note: All data on the volume will be lost!)**
3. After this is done, exit the Intel® RST UEFI UI.

8.4 Using the RAID Configuration Utilities (DOS, UEFI Shell, and Windows)

Run "rcfgsata.exe in DOS environment (or rcfgsata.efi in UEFI shell)" or "rstcli.exe/rstcli64.exe" (Windows environment) with the following command line flag to delete a RAID volume. The following command line will instruct the utility to delete a RAID 0 volume named "OEMRAID0"

```
C:\>rcfgsata.exe /D OEMRAID0
C:\>rstcli.exe --manage --delete OEMRAID0
```

The following command line will display usage for all support command line parameters:

```
C:\>rcfgsata.exe(rcfgsata.efi) /?

C:\>rstcli.exe --help
```

9 Common RAID Setup Procedures

9.1 Build a SATA RAID 0, 1, 5 or 10 System

This is the most common setup. This configuration will have the operating system striped for RAID 0, or mirrored for RAID 1, or striped with parity for RAID 5, or mirrored and striped across two or up to four drives of the same BUS PROTOCOL GROUP for RAID 10. To prepare for this, you must have the Intel RAID driver on a floppy disk. See the procedure for creating this floppy further down in this document.

1. Assemble the system using a motherboard that supports Intel Rapid Storage Technology and attach the drives depending on the RAID level that will be built.

2. Enter System BIOS Setup and ensure that RAID mode is enabled. This setting may be different for each motherboard manufacturer. Consult the manufacturer's user manual if necessary. When done, exit Setup.

3. Upon re-boot if your system is using a legacy OROM, you will see the Option ROM status message on the screen – press CTRL-I to enter the Intel Rapid Storage Technology Option ROM user interface.

4. Within this UI, select option '1. Create RAID Volume'. When 'Create RAID Volume' menu is displayed, fill the following items:

    a. Name: Enter a volume name, and press Enter to proceed to next menu item,

    b. RAID Level: select RAID level (0, 1, 5, 10), and press Enter to proceed to next menu item;

    c. Disks: press Enter on 'Select Disks' to select the hard drives to be used for your configuration.

    d. Within the 'SELECT DISKS' window, choose the hard drives and press Enter to return to the 'MAIN MENU'.

    e. Strip Size: Applicable for RAID levels 0, 5, and 10 only. You may choose the default size or another supported size in the list and press Enter to proceed to the next item.

    f. Capacity: The default size would be the maximum allowable size summation of all the drives in your configuration. You may decrease this volume size to a lower value. If you specified a lower capacity size volume, the remaining space could be utilized for creating another RAID volume. Press Enter to proceed to the next item.

g. Create Volume: Press Enter to create a volume.

h. Press 'Y' to confirm the creation of volume.

5. After this is done, exit the Intel Rapid Storage Technology option ROM user interface by pressing the Esc key or Option #4.

6. Begin OS setup by booting from the Windows OS installation CD.

7. Installation procedures as follows: Use the 'load driver' mechanism when prompted. Insert a USB key with the Intel® RST driver and browse to the directory on the USB key where the driver that you wish to install is located. Select the driver INF file. If correct the proper Intel controller for your system will be shown. Continue the driver install.

8. Finish the Windows installation and install all other necessary drivers.

9. Install the Intel Rapid Storage Technology software package obtained from the Intel VIP website. This will add the *Intel* Rapid Storage Technology UI that can be used to manage the RAID configuration.

9.2 Build a "RAID Ready" System

The following steps outline how to build an Intel "RAID Ready" system with OS installed on a single SATA hard drive. A "RAID Ready" system can be upgraded to RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID5 or RAID 10 at a later time using the RAID migration feature built into Intel Rapid Storage Technology. Intel® RST enables you to install additional SATA hard drives, and then migrate to a RAID level volume without re-installing the operating system.

1. Assemble the system using a motherboard that supports Intel Rapid Storage Technology with Intel Rapid Storage Technology OROM integrated into the BIOS and attach one SATA hard drive.

2. Enter System BIOS Setup; ensure that RAID mode is enabled. This setting may be different for each motherboard manufacturer. Consult your manufacturer's user manual if necessary. When done, exit Setup.

3. Begin Windows Setup by booting from the Windows OS installation CD.

4. Installation procedures as follows: Use the 'load driver' mechanism when prompted. Insert a USB key with the Intel® RST driver and browse to the directory on the USB key where the driver that you wish to install is located. Select the driver INF file. If correct the proper Intel controller for your system will be shown. Continue the driver install:

5. Finish the Windows installation and install all other necessary drivers.

6. Install the Intel Rapid Storage Technology software package obtained from the Intel VIP website. This will add the *Intel* Rapid Storage Technology UI that can be used to manage the RAID configuration.

9.3 Migrate to RAID 0 or RAID 1 on an Existing "RAID Ready" System

If you have an existing "RAID Ready" system as defined in section 6.2: Build a SATA "RAID Ready" System, then you can use the following steps to migrate from a single-drive non-RAID configuration to a two drive RAID 0 or RAID 1 configuration. The resulting configuration will be identical to that created by the procedure in section 6.1: Build a SATA AID0, 1, 5 or 10 System. To prepare for this, you will need to install another drive with a capacity equal to or greater than the capacity of the drive being used as the source hard drive and also belong to the same BUS PROTOCOL GROUP as the source drive.

1. Note the port number of the source hard drive already in the system; you will use this to select hard drive for preserving data for the migration.

2. Install the second drive on the system.

3. Boot Windows, then install the Intel Rapid Storage Technology software, if not already installed, using the setup package obtained from a CD-ROM or from the Internet. This will install the necessary Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI and start menu links.

4. Open the Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI from the Start Menu and select the volume type under Create from the Actions menu. Click on 'Next'

5. Under the configure options provide the volume name , select disks

6. When the disks are selected, the user will be presented the option to select the disk on which to preserve the data. Here the user need to select the right disk on the which the data needs to preserved and migrated

7. After the migration is complete, reboot the system. If you migrated to a RAID 0 volume, use Disk Management from within Windows in order to partition and format the empty space created when the two hard drive capacities are combined. You may also use third-party software to extend any existing partitions within the RAID volume.

9.4 Migrate an Existing Data Hard Drive to a RAID 0 or RAID 1 Volume

If you are booting from a parallel ATA (PATA*) drive that contains the operating system, you may use the Intel Rapid Storage Technology to create a RAID 0 or RAID 1 volume on two SATA drives. Also, if you have a single SATA hard drive that contains program or personal data, you may use the migration feature to use this hard drive as the source hard drive for a migration. After the migration is completed, you will have a two hard drive RAID 0 volume where data is striped or a two hard drive RAID 1 volume where the data is mirrored across the two SATA hard drives. To do this, the PCH I/O RAID Controller must be enabled in the BIOS and you must have the Intel Rapid Storage Technology software installed.

Begin with a system where you are booting from a PATA hard drive. Make sure the PCH I/O RAID controller is enabled and the Intel Rapid Storage Technology is installed. Then do the following:

1. Note the serial number of the SATA hard drive that is already installed. You will use this to select it as the source hard drive when initiating the migration.

2. Physically attach the second SATA hard drive to the available SATA port.

3. Boot to Windows, install the Rapid Storage Technology software, if not already installed, using the setup package obtained from a CD-ROM or from the Internet. This will install the necessary Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI and start menu links.

4. Open the Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI from the Start Menu.

5. Follow steps 4 to 7 in section 6.3

9.5 Migrating From one RAID Level to Another

RAID level migration allows an existing RAID configuration to be migrated to another RAID configuration. The following migrations are possible.
NOTE: Not all migrations are supported on all chipsets. The support varies depending on the chipset and the ports supported on the chipset (For supported migrations for each chipset please Intel Rapid Storage Technology product requirements document):

Change Type from	To
2-disk recovery volume	2-disk RAID 1
2-disk RAID 1	2-disk recovery volume
2-disk RAID 1	2-disk RAID 0 3, 4, 5 or 6-disk RAID 0 3, 4, 5 or 6-disk RAID 5
2-disk RAID 0	3, 4, 5 or 6-disk RAID 5
3-disk RAID 0	4, 5 or 6-disk RAID 5
4-disk RAID 0	5 or 6-disk RAID 5
4-disk RAID 10	4, 5 or 6-disk RAID 5

Note: In order for the migration options to be accessible, the minimum required SATA hard drives for the RAID level have to be met.

Please follow the procedure illustrated below

1. Start the Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI application:

   Start Menu ->All Programs -> Intel Rapid Storage Technology -> Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI

2. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the array or volume to which you want to modify. The volume properties now display on the left.

3. Click 'Change type'.

4. In the 'Change Volume Type' dialog, type a new name if you want to change the default name.
5. Select the new volume type, and then click 'OK'.
6. The 'Manage' page refreshes and reports the new volume type.
7. After the migration starts, you can view the migration progress under status.
8. When the Status field indicates volume as ‘Normal’, the migration is complete.

9.6 Create a RAID Volume on Intel® SATA Controller While Booting to Different Controller

This configuration is for users who would like to use a RAID 0 volume as a high performance data hard drive or use the data redundancy properties of RAID 1. Starting with a configuration where the system is booting to a Windows, with installation on a different disk controller, the user can add two SATA hard drives and create a RAID volume on them.

1. Physically install two SATA hard drives to the system.
2. Enter System BIOS Setup; ensure that RAID mode is enabled. This setting may be different for each motherboard manufacturer. Consult your manufacturer’s user manual if necessary. When done, exit Setup.
3. Boot to Windows; install the Intel Rapid Storage Technology software, if not already installed, use the setup package obtained from a CD-ROM or from the Internet. This will install the necessary Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI and Start menu links.
4. Use the Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI to create a RAID 0 volume on two SATA drives according to the procedure in section 6.1 of this document.
5. After the RAID volume is created, you will need to use Windows Disk Management or other third-party software to create a partition within the RAID volume and format the partition. At this point, you may begin to copy files to, or install software on, the RAID volume.

9.7 Build a RAID 0 or RAID 1 System in an Automated Factory Environment

This is a two-part process. First, create the master image of the Windows installation; you will load these on the system before they are delivered to the customer. The second part is to apply this image to a system that has two SATA hard drives installed with a RAID 0 or RAID 1 volume. This procedure will apply the image to the RAID volume so that the system may boot from it and the operating system will be fully striped by the RAID 0 volume or mirrored by the RAID 1 volume. The same

procedure, and master image, could be applied to a single SATA hard drive to create a "RAID Ready" system.

9.7.1 Part 1: Create the Master Image

1. Build a RAID 0 or RAID 1 System as described in section 6.1 of this document.

2. Install the Intel Rapid Storage Technology software from the CD-ROM included with your motherboard or after downloading it from the Internet. This will add the Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI that can be used to manage the RAID configuration in Windows*.

3. Use third-party software to create an image of the RAID volume as if it were a physical hard drive or create an image of the partition within the RAID volume containing the operating system, program and data files.

4. Store it in a place where it can be accessed by systems on the assembly line.

9.7.2 Part 2: Apply the Master Image

1. Assemble the system using a motherboard that supports Rapid Storage Technology and attach two SATA hard drives.

2. Enter System BIOS Setup; ensure that RAID mode is enabled. This setting may be different for each motherboard manufacturer. Consult your manufacturer's user manual if necessary. When done, exit Setup.

3. Within a DOS environment, use the Intel RAID Configuration utility (RCfgSata.exe) to create a RAID volume (or use rcfgsata.efi from a UEFI shell). The following command line will instruct the utility to create a RAID 0 volume named "OEMRAID0" on the hard drives on Port 0 and 1 with a strip size of 128 KB and a size of 120GB (rcfgsata.efi can replace rcfgsata.exe if using the UEFI shell environment):

   C:\>rcfgsata.exe /C:OEMRAID0 /DS:0 1 /SS:128 /L:0 /S:120.
   The following command line will display all supported command line parameters and their usage: *C:\>RCfgSata.exe /?*

4. The system does not need to be rebooted before moving on to the next step. If there are no PATA hard drives in the system, the RAID volume created will become the boot device upon reboot.

5. Use third-party software to apply the image created in Part 1 to the RAID volume you created in Part 2.

10 RAID Volume Data Verification and Repair Feature

This feature is available starting with Intel® Matrix Storage Manager 6.1.

10.1 Verify and Repair Volume Feature

The RAID volume verification feature identifies any inconsistencies or bad data on a RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5, or RAID 10 volume and reports the number of inconsistencies or number of blocks with media errors found during RAID volume data verification.

When the verification process is complete, a dialog will appear that displays the number of verification errors, verification errors repaired and blocks with media errors that were found.

Follow the below steps to start RAID volume data verification

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage' click on the RAID volume you want to perform the verify operation under 'storage system view'. The volume properties now display on the left.

2. Click on 'Advanced' and then Click on 'Verify'

3. For RAID 0 the verification process starts once you click 'verify'. For RAID1, 5, 10, Recovery volumes, a dialog box with check box option to repair the errors found automatically during the verification process is present. If the user wants to perform repair you can select this box and then click 'verify'.

4. The verification progress is shown under 'status'

5. When the verification process is complete and the volume status is set to normal, now you can click on the volume under 'status' or 'manage'. Under the volume properties to the left under 'Advanced' you can view the number of verification errors, verification errors repaired and blocks with media errors that were found.

10.2 Verify and Repair Scheduler

The Verify and Repair feature includes a scheduler for the Verify and Repair (V&R) operation. To enable the scheduler take the following steps:

Pre-conditions: UI installed, at least 1 RAID volume on the system that is initialized, in normal state, and a valid RAID type (RRT, R0**, R1, R5, R10) *****RAID 0 volumes can only do a Verify; they cannot be repaired***

1. Login to Windows and launch the Intel® RST UI and click on the 'Preferences' tab at the top of the UI
2. From the 'Preferences' page, select the 'Scheduler' button on the left navigation pane to display the
3. Check mark the 'Enable scheduler' checkbox
4. Select 'Recurrence' schedule: Once (default), Daily, Weekly, or Monthly
5. Select the 'Start Date'; day for the scheduler to begin/run the V&R operation
6. Select the 'Time' of the scheduled runs on a 24 hour clock
7. Select the 'Recur every' schedule: choices will vary depending upon what is selected for 'Recurrence' (this step is not applicable for Recurrence of once)
8. Select whether or not to Automatically Repair Errors encountered during the Verify operation
9. Click 'Apply Changes' to enable

11 Intel® Rapid Recover Technology

This technology utilizes RAID 1 functionality to copy data from a designated Master drive to a designated Recovery drive with the following limitations:

- **The size of the Master drive must be less than or equal to the size of the Recovery drive.**
- **The size of the Master drive is limited to less than or equal to (<=) 1.3125TB in capacity.**

When a Recovery volume is created, complete capacity of the Master drive will be used as the Master volume. Only one Recovery Volume can exist on a system. There are 2 methods of updating the data on the Master to the Recovery drive. They are:

- Continuous Update Policy
- On Request Update Policy

When using the continuous update policy, changes made to the data on the master drive while the recovery drive is not available are automatically copied to the recovery drive becomes available. When using the Update on request policy, the master drive data can be restored to a previous state by copying the data on the recovery drive back to the master drive.

Some of the advantages of Intel® Rapid Recover Technology are:

- More control over how data is copied between master and recovery drives
- Fast volume updates (only changes to the master drive since the last update are copied to the recovery drive)
- Member hard drive data can be viewed in Windows* Explorer
- Better power management on mobile systems by spinning down the Recovery drive when in On Request Update Policy mode or when the Recovery drive goes offline when in Continuous Update Policy mode.

Applications: Critical data protection for mobile systems; fast restoration of the master drive to a previous or default state.

11.1 Creating a Recovery Volume Through the RAID Option ROM

A Recovery volume consists of two disks – a primary disk and a recovery disk.

A Recovery volume can be created through the RAID Option ROM or through Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UI application.

Follow the below steps to create a Recovery volume through the OROM

1. Enter the OROM by pressing the Ctrl and I keys early during system POST.
2. Under the 'Create RAID' volume option, select the option to create a Recovery volume.
3. Select the Primary disk and the Recovery disk.

Note: The Primary disk size must be less than or equal to the Recovery disk size.

OROM Recovery menu provides the following options

1. Enable Only Recovery Disk
2. Enable Only Master Disk

11.2 Creating a Recovery Volume Using the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UEFI User Interface

Follow the below steps to create a Recovery volume through the UEFI UI

1. Enter the BIOS Setup Menu and select Intel® Rapid Storage Technology menu.
2. Select 'Create RAID Volume'.
3. Select the RAID Level [Recovery].
4. Select Name and type in the name of the volume.
5. Highlight each drive and press <space> bar to select either R or M depending on which disk will be Recovery or Master.
6. Highlight Synchronization, press <Enter> and select Mode of 'On Request' or 'Continuous'
7. Highlight 'Create Volume' and press <Enter>
8. Volume created will be displayed on Main Page.

11.3 Creating a Recovery Volume Through the Intel® RST UI

To create a Recovery volume through the Rapid Storage Technology UI, the system needs to be configured in RAID mode with 2 drives. Boot the system and open the Rapid Storage Technology UI application.

Follow the below steps to create a Recovery Volume

1. Under Create select the volume type as 'Recovery' and click 'Next'

2. Under the 'Configure Volume' you can change the default volume name if you want, then select the 'master' disk and then the 'recovery' disk. Now change the 'update' mode if needed to 'On Request'. The default selection is 'continuous'.

3. Once all the above selections are made, click 'Next'

4. Under 'Confirm' review the selected configuration. If you are not ok with the configuration click 'back' or click 'create volume' if you are fine with the configuration.

5. Now you will see a dialog box with warning message and read the warning message before clicking 'ok' to make sure you are erasing data on the right disk.

6. Once you click 'ok' the volume creation starts and progress of the volume creation can be viewed under status. Once the status is set to 'normal' the volume creation is completed.

7. The system will synchronize the Primary with the Recovery disk once after the creation of the Recovery volume.

11.4 Changing Recovery Volume Modes

When you have a recovery volume on your system in 'continuous mode' or 'on request' mode and you need to change the mode of the recovery volume, follow the below steps

1. Open Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UI.

2. Under 'Manage' or 'Status' click on the recovery volume under the storage system view on right where you need to change the update mode. The volume properties now display on the left view

3. Click 'change mode' and then click 'yes' to confirm.

4. The page refreshes and the volume properties report the new update mode. NOTE: Disabling the continuous update policy requires the end-user to request updates manually. Only changes since the last update process are copied. The recovery volume will remain in On Request Policy until the end-user enables continuous updates.

11.5 Update Recovery Volume in On Request Update Policy

When the recovery volume is 'on request' mode on your system and you need to synchronize the data between both the master and recovery disk , follow the below instructions

1. Open Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UI.

2. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume. The volume properties now display on the left.

3. Click ‘Update data’.

4. A dialog box is shown stating that the only changes since the last update will be copied. Select the check box if you don’t want this confirmation message to display each time you request an update. Click ‘Yes’ to confirm.

5. The progress of update process can be viewed under ‘status’ or ‘manage’.

11.6 Access Recovery Drive Files

When data recovery to the master disk of a recovery volume is required, you can use ‘access the recovery disk files’ option. This action is only available if a recovery volume is present, in a normal state, and in on request update mode. Follow the below instructions to access the recovery drive file when you have a recovery volume in ‘on request’ mode on your system (If the recovery drive is not in continuous mode, use the instructions in section 8.3 to change the mode)

1. Open the ‘Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI’.

2. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume. The volume properties now display on the left.

3. Click on 'Access recovery disk files'.

4. Now you can view recovery disk files using Windows Explorer*.

NOTE: The recovery drive can only be accessible in read only mode and data updates are not available in that state

11.7 Hide Recovery Drive Files

This action is only present when the recovery drive is on request mode and the recovery drive files are accessible. Follow the below instructions to hide the recovery drive files

1. Open the ‘Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI’.

2. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume. The volume properties now display on the left.

3. Click ‘Hide recovery disk files’.

4. Now the recovery drive files are no longer accessible in Windows Explorer.

5. The page refreshes and data updates on the volume are now available.

11.8 Scenarios of Recovering Data

Scenario 1:
What happens if the Recovery drive that is part of the Intel® Rapid Recover Technology volume fails or gets stolen?

Solution:
When a Recovery drive that is part of a Intel® Rapid Recover Technology volume fails, follow the below steps to set up a new disk as the Recovery drive.

1. Shut down the system.
2. Remove the failed Recovery disk and insert a new hard drive. The size of the new drive must be greater than or equal to the Master drive.
3. Boot to the Master drive and open Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI.
4. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume to be rebuilt. The volume properties now display on the left.
5. Click on 'rebuild to another disk'
6. Now a dialog box is shown requesting you to select one of the non RAID disks to rebuild the volume.
7. Once the disk selection is complete, click 'rebuild'
8. Now you can view the progress of the build under 'status' or 'manage'

Scenario 2:
What happens if the Master Drive fails and/or the user would like to do a reverse synchronization to a new Master Drive?

Solution:
If the Recovery volume was in Continuous update policy when the Master drive crashed, then the system will continue to function off of the Recovery drive.

If the Recovery volume was in Update on Request policy, then a Master drive failure may result in a BSOD.

In either case, follow the below steps to create a new Master drive using the Recovery Drive.

1. Shut down the system.
2. Remove the old Master disk and connect a new Hard Disk Drive to be designated as the new Master disk. **Note:** The size of the new Master drive should be less than or equal to the Recovery disk.
3. Power on the system. It will automatically boot from the Recovery drive. After the operating system is running, select the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UI from the Start Menu.
4. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume to be rebuilt. The volume properties now display on the left.
5. Click on 'rebuild to another disk'.
6. Now a dialog box is shown requesting you to select one of the non RAID disks to rebuild the volume.
7. Once the disk selection is complete, click 'rebuild'.
8. Now you can view the progress of the build under 'status' or 'manage'.

Scenario 3:
What is the expected behavior if a power failure occurs (and no battery supply available) in the middle of migration for each of the below?

- Creating a recovery volume (migration)
- Updating a recovery volume (Copy some files from Master drive to Recovery drive)
- Verify and Repair a recovery volume
- Recovering a recovery volume (copy from a Recovery drive to a Master Drive

Solution:

In each case, upon the next reboot, the migration, or Verifying a Recovery Volume, or Verify and Repair a Recovery Volume or Recovering a Recovery Volume operation would continue normally starting from where it had been interrupted by the power failure.

In the case where the Recovery volume was getting updated or was being recovered, if it were a fast synchronization, then if writes had been in progress while the power was lost, then it would result in a dirty shutdown. As a result, the fast synchronization would degenerate to a slow synchronization or a complete update.

Note: If the system is running is on battery, the volume will not synchronize if it is in continuous update policy. If the volume is in Update on Request policy, then the synchronization will be successful.

Additional comments: need to call out that an on update volume should first be updated before the recovery disk is valid.

Scenario 4:
Once a system is configured with Intel Raid Recover Technology, a user would like to revert the Master Drive Data to a Previous State.

Solution:
If the recovery volume is set to the on request update policy, you can revert master drive data to the state it was in at the end of the last volume update process. This is especially useful when a virus is detected on the master drive or guests use your system.

1. Restart the system. During the system startup, press Ctrl-I to enter the user interface of the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology option ROM.
2. In the 'MAIN MENU' select 'Recovery Volume Options'.
3. In the 'Recovery Volume Options' menu, select 'Enable Only Recovery Disk' to boot from the recovery drive.
4. Exit the option ROM and start up Windows*.
5. After the operating system is running, select the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UI from the Start Menu.
6. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume to be recovered. The volume properties now display on the left.
7. Click on ‘recover data’ and then click ‘ok’ on the dialog box.
8. Now you can view the progress of the recovery under ‘status’ or ‘manage’.
9. Once the recovery of the volume is completed, you can reboot to the master drive.

12 System Running from Recovery Drive

The "System Running from Recovery Drive " is an existing feature in the current UI but is documented here for the sole purpose of providing Validation and Localization with the flow of expected behavior for test pass preparation.

12.1 Drive Offline or Missing

System Configuration	2 hard drives: recovery drive connected, master drive offline or missing
Product Condition	Recovery volume created with recovery drive normal and master drive offline or missing

- Access UI OROM – Note that the master drive is designated as an offline disk or master drive missing
- Select option 4 Recovery Volume Options

Figure 10

Then Select Option 2 Enable Only Recovery Disk.

13 Pre-OS Installation of the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology Driver

The Intel® Rapid Storage Technology driver can be loaded before installing the Windows OS on a RAID volume or when in AHCI mode. All later Windows OS releases do not require that the Intel® RST driver be installed and loaded prior to the OS installation. On those OS versions the Intel® RST driver can be loaded post OS installation. The Intel® Rapid Storage Technology AHCI driver can be installed over Window's native AHCI driver.

13.1 Pre-OS Driver Installation Using the "Load Driver" Method

1. During the Operating system installation, after selecting the location to install Windows click on 'Load Driver' button to install the Intel® RST storage AHCI/RAID driver.
2. When prompted, insert the media with the Intel® RST driver files and press Enter.
3. You can find the media and browse to the folder where the files are located.
4. Follow the steps to load the driver and return the installation.
5. Continue the installation.

14 Determining the Version of the RAID Driver

There are two accurate ways to do this. The first is to use the Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI. The second alternate method is to locate the driver (iaStorA.sys) itself and view its properties.

14.1 Using Intel® Rapid Storage Technology User Interface (UI)

Use this method if the Intel® RST UI is installed on the system; if not use the alternate method.

1. Run the Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI from the following Start Menu path:
2. Start→All Programs→Intel® Rapid Storage Technology →Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI
3. Click on the top menu button 'help' to launch the 'Help' window. In the 'help' window click the top menu button 'System Report"
4. If not already expanded, click on 'Intel® Rapid Storage Technology' link to expand the item. Under it you can view the driver version in the following format: WW.XX.YY.ZZZZ
5. This is the current version of the user interface utility installed on your system. The WW.XX.YY portion is the product release number; the ZZZZ portion is the build number. E.g. 10.5.1.1001.

14.2 Using Intel® RST File Properties (Alternate)

1. Locate the file "iaStorA.sys" within the following path:

   <System Root>\Windows\System32\Drivers
2. Right Click on "iaStorA.sys" and select Properties
3. Select the "Details" tab (for Windows 7; may vary for other OS versions)
4. At the top of this tab, there should be a parameter called "File version". Next to it is the version of the driver currently installed on your system. It should have the same format and version as the one you obtained using the Intel Rapid Storage Technology UI

14.3 Determining the Version of the Option ROM

There are two ways to determine the version of the Intel Rapid Storage Technology option ROM integrated into the system BIOS. Use the following procedure to determine the version.

14.3.1 Using the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UI

1. Follow the procedure illustrated in section 11.1
2. Look for the parameter RAID Option ROM version.

14.3.2 Using the Intel® RST Option ROM User Interface

1. Early in system boot-up, during post, or when you see the "Intel® RAID for Serial ATA" status screen output, type CTRL-I. This will open the Option ROM user interface.
2. The following banner will be displayed:
3. Intel® Rapid Storage Technology option ROM w.x.y.zzzz Intel® SATA Controller
4. w.x.y.zzzz is the version of the Option ROM currently installed on your system. The w.x.y portion is the product release number; the zzzz portion is the build number.

14.3.3 Using the EFI Shell

If the UEFI Driver is enabled the following command can be issued from the EFI shell:

Shell:>Drivers

The Intel®RST UEFI driver will be shown along with version, where xx.x.x.xxxx will be replaced with the actual UEFI OROM Version i.e.:

"CD 0000000B B - - 1 2 Intel® RST xx.x.x.xxxx SATA Driver"

15 Un-installation

Uninstalling the RAID driver could potentially cause an end-user to lose access to important data within a RAID volume. This is because the driver can only provide functionality for the Intel® SATA RAID controller. Therefore, Intel does not provide a way to permanently remove the driver from the system. However, disabling the Intel® SATA RAID Controller causes the operating system to not use the RAID driver.

The uninstallation application that is included with the Intel Rapid Storage Technology software can remove all components except the RAID driver (i.e. it removes the UI application, Start Menu links, Control Panel Applet, etc.).

Use the following procedures to remove the Intel Rapid Storage Technology software or to disable the SATA RAID controller:

15.1 Uninstalling the Intel® RST Software (except the RAID Driver)

1. Run the Uninstall program from the following start menu link:

2. Start→All Programs→Intel® Rapid Storage Technology →Uninstall

3. The first dialog box that appears gives you the option of un-installing all components of the Intel Rapid Storage Technology software except the RAID driver. Click 'OK' to do so.

4. The next dialog box is a confirmation that you would like to un-install all components of the software except the RAID driver. Click 'Yes' to confirm.

5. All components of the software will be un-installed except the RAID driver. You should no longer see any Start menu links to the UI application or a control panel applet for Intel Rapid Storage Technology. However, the RAID configuration should still function normally.

15.2 Disabling the RAID Driver by Disabling the RAID Controller

WARNING: ***If you use this method and your computer's operating system is installed to a disk attached to the Intel® SATA RAID Controller, you will no longer be able to boot into that operating system!***

1. Enter System BIOS Setup and disable RAID Mode. This setting may be different for each motherboard manufacturer. Consult your manufacturer's user manual if necessary. When done, exit Setup.

2. Reboot the system (The OS must have been installed on a disk not attached to the Intel® SATA RAID controller). You should no longer see the RAID Option ROM

status screen during boot, and you should no longer see the Intel® SATA RAID Controller in Device Manager.

3. At this point, Windows will no longer be using the RAID driver and you will not have Intel RAID functionality. **All data contained in existing RAID volumes will no longer be accessible.** To re-enable Intel RAID functionality, re-enter System BIOS Setup and re-enable RAID mode.

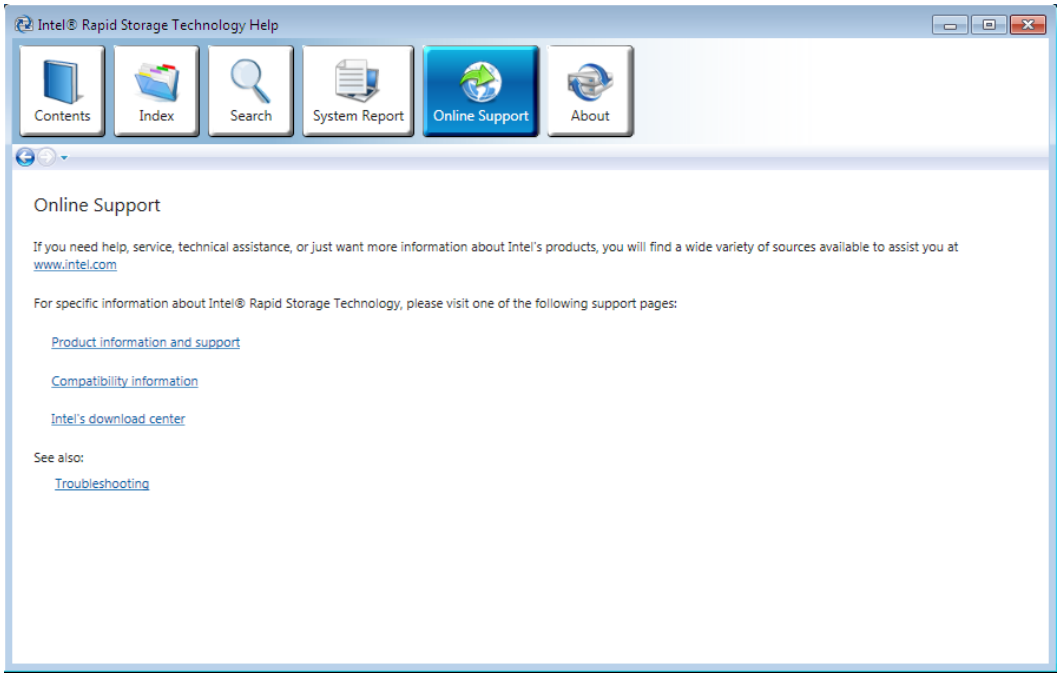
Uninstall Note: End-users can use this same procedure to disable the Intel® SATA RAID Controller if necessary. In fact, the uninstall program used in section 12.1 of this document will display a text file with a similar procedure. Run the Uninstall Program, click 'Cancel' when presented with the first dialog box, then click 'Yes' at the second dialog box to read the text document containing the procedure.

16 Registry Customizations

Note: Windows registry changes require reboot to take effect.

After installation of the Intel Rapid Storage Technology, the registry will contain keys to allow customization of several features. Customize Support URLs in Rapid Storage Technology UI

The Rapid Storage Technology UI [Help] Menu, Submenu [Online Support] when selected will display a pop-up window with the support URLs as shown in the figure below:



Product information and support :
(http://www.intel.com/p/en_US/support/highlights/chpsts/imsm)

Compatibility information : (http://www.intel.com/support/chipsets/imsm/sb/CS-020680.htm)

Intel's download center :
(http://downloadcenter.intel.com/SearchResult.aspx?lang=eng&ProductFamily=Chipsets&ProductLine=Chipset+Software&ProductProduct=Intel%c2%ae+Rapid+Storage+Technology+(Intel%c2%ae+RST)&ProdId=2101&LineId=1090&FamilyId=40)

16.1 Zero Power ODD Settings

Beginning with the Intel® RST 10.0 release and the Intel® Mobile Express Chipset SATA AHCI and the Intel® Desktop/Workstation/Server Express Chipset SATA AHCI controllers (PCH), the product supports the zero-power ODD feature (also referred to as ZPODD). It is intended to allow an unused ODD to be powered off, and then powered on only upon receipt of demand requests or when the ODD eject button is pressed. This goal is achieved by utilizing ACPI** methods to change the power condition of the drive when several platform (HW) conditions exist.

**Note: This feature is not supported on Windows XP and older operating systems.

Associated with this feature are two registry keys located at *[KEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStorA\Parameters]*

1. ZPODD enable/disable

```
[KEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStorA\Parameters\Device]

"OddZeroPowerEnable"=dword(0, 1)
```

This key determines a platform's eligibility for the feature. When the value is zero then this feature will be disabled. When the value is non-zero or not present the feature will be enabled. Default value will be enabled (**1**).

2. ODD idle timeout

```
[KEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStorA\Parameters\Device]

"SecondsToOddZeroPower"=dword:(30, 300)
```

This key determines the idle timeout value. When the value is zero then this feature will be disabled. The value is the number of seconds the ODD must be idle (defined as a period of time in which no non-GESN commands are received; minimum value is 30 and maximum value is 300) before the ODD will be powered off. The default value is **60.** If the registry value is set to a value outside this range then the default value of 60 seconds will be used.

16.2 E-mail Notification UI Visible Enable/Disable

By default the e-mail notification feature is visible in the UI under the [Preferences] button. The registry can be modified to allow or disallow the end-user from being able to configure the system to allow email notification. The registry key by default is not populated in the registry. In order to remove the functionality from the UI the registry key has to be created using the following settings:

Open the registry editor and Add the following key:

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Intel\IRST

Create a new DWORD (32) value as follows:

DisableEmail

Registry Value	Description
DisableEmail	DWORD(32) = 0 (default): By default or when this value is created and cleared to 0, the UI [Preferences] page displays an item in the left column of the page that allows the user to setup the desired e-mail preferences for the system.
	DWORD(32) = 1: When this value is created and set to 1, the UI will not display a menu item in the 'Preferences' page for the end-user to setup email notification on the system. The feature is disabled.

16.3 Disabling Maximized Mode Option for Intel® SRT

OEMs have the ability to disable the Accelerate Maximized mode option and limit the Intel® Smart Response Technology to Enhanced mode selection only.

The registry key by default is not populated in the registry. In order to remove the functionality from the UI the registry key has to be created using the following settings:

Open the registry editor and Add the following key:

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Intel\IRST

Create a new DWORD (32) value as follows:

DisablePerformanceMode

Registry Value	Description
DisablePerformanceMode	DWORD(32) = 0 (default): By default or when this value is created and cleared to 0, the UI will allow the end-user to Accelerate disks/volumes in both Maximized and Enhanced mode.
	DWORD(32) = 1: When this value is created and set to 1, the UI will not display the option to Accelerate to Maximized mode and will not allow the user to change from Enhanced mode to Maximized mode

16.4 Rebuild On Hot Insert

When a redundant RAID volume is in the 'Degraded' state and a hot insert event of a new disk is detected by the RST driver, the driver will automatically begin a rebuild of the degraded RAID volume to the new disk. The new disk must meet all the requirements to be an array member of the degraded RAID array.

The registry key by default is not populated in the registry. In order to enable the functionality in the UI the registry key has to be created using the following settings:
Open the registry editor and Add the following key:

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStorA\Parameters\Device

Create a new DWORD (32) value as follows:

RebuildOnHotInsert

Registry Value	Description
RebuildOnHotInsert	DWORD(32) = 0 (default): By default or when this value is created and cleared to 0, this feature is disabled.
	DWORD(32) = 1: When this value is created and set to 1, this feature is enabled and when all the system conditions are met, the driver will begin an auto-rebuild upon hot insertion of a supported disk.

16.5 SATA Asynchronous Notification

The location of the key to control SATA Asynchronous Notification functionality has been added.

The registry key by default is not populated in the registry, but AN is enabled by default. In order to change the functionality in the driver, the registry key has to be created using the following setting:
Open the registry editor and Add the following key:

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStorA\Parameters\Device

Create a new DWORD (32) value as follows:

Controller0PhyXANEnable

Where 'X' represents the SATA port on which AN is to be disabled or enabled.

Registry Value	Description
Controller0PhyXANEnable	DWORD(32) = 0 When set to 0, this feature is disabled.
	DWORD(32) = 1 (default) When set to 1, this feature is enabled.

16.6 Runtime D3 (RTD3)

RTD3 is a Windows power savings feature that has one configurable parameter that specifies when devices can be placed into a sleep state while the system is running.

KEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Enum\SCSI\<Device ID>\<instance ID>\Device Parameters\Storport

The DWORD (32) value is as follows:

MinimumIdleTimeoutInMS

Registry Value	Description
MinimumIdleTimeoutInMS	DWORD(32) = {0 to MAXULONG-1} The valid minimum timeout values (in milliseconds) for RTD3
	DWORD(32) = *MAXULONG*: Indicates the user does not want the device to enter RTD3

16.7 Hybrid Hinting

Hybrid Hinting is enabled automatically without the need for user intervention. In the case that Hybrid Hinting needs to be disabled, a registry key can be created for that purpose. On Windows 8.1 platforms, a registry key is automatically added without user intervention.

16.7.1 Instructions to Disable Hybrid Hinting

Enter the registry editor and navigate to the following path:

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStorA\Parameters\Device

Create a new DWORD (32) value as follows:

HybridHintDisabled

Registry Value	Description
HybridHintDisabled	DWORD(32) = 0 Leaves Hybrid Hinting enabled
	DWORD(32) = 1 Disables Hybrid Hinting

16.7.2 Hybrid Hint Reset

As of Win* 8.1, MSFT introduced hinting in their inbox driver. This leaves the hybrid threshold in states that causes decreased performance when the RST driver is installed AFTER Win* 8.1 OS is installed using MSFT inbox driver. To prevent this scenario, RST has provided the following registry key when an SSHD is detected on the system and Hybrid Hinting minimum requirements are met:

Name: **HybridHintReset**

Location:
KEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStorA\Parameters\Device

Note: Upon the first reboot after the driver installation is complete, the registry key is written and the hybrid log reset by the driver. Once the registry key is written, it will remain throughout reboots and OS upgrades. If deleted manually, it will be rewritten automatically by the driver upon the next reboot.

16.7.3 Disable Hybrid Hinting During Hibernation

On systems using SSHDs with small NAND size and when hybrid shutdown is enabled in Microsoft OS, it is recommended to disable hybrid hinting during hibernation. This key can be added to prevent longer shutdown time in some cases. In these cases, OEMs/ODMs may use this key to base their evaluation results.

The following registry key can be added to disable hybrid hinting during hibernation.

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStorA\Parameters\Device

Create a new DWORD (32) value as follows:

HiberFileHintDisable

Registry Value	Description
HiberFileHintDisable	DWORD(32) = 0 Enable hybrid hinting during hibernate (Default)
	DWORD(32) = 1 Disable hybrid hinting during hibernate

17 Power Savings with Intel® Rapid Storage Technology

17.1 Link Power Management (LPM)

Intel® Rapid Storage Technology implements the Link power management (LPM) feature described by the Serial ATA specification to overcome the power demand of a high-speed serial interface, SATA and providing the capability of SATA at the minimum power cost. LPM, when used in conjunction with a SATA hard drive that supports this feature, enables lower power consumption. LPM was initially enabled by default on mobile platforms starting with ICH6M with Intel® Matrix Storage Manager. Starting with ICH9R this feature has also been supported on desktop platforms with Intel® Matrix Storage Manager 7.5 release but not enabled by default.

Beginning with the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology 10.0 release, LPM support is enabled by default on both mobile and desktop platforms. OEM's who wish to modify the default settings for LPM on their platforms can follow the instructions in the section titled Instructions to disable/enable LPM.

17.1.1 Instructions to disable/enable LPM

After the system is setup with the OS and Intel® Rapid Storage Technology is installed, follow the below instructions to modify the default LPM support.

NOTE: Beginning with the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology 10.0 release, the registry keys are no longer populated in the Windows registry by default. The RST driver does not require the registry keys to be present to support the default settings.

1. Go to **Start->Run**
2. Type in **RegEdit** and press the Enter Key.
3. Go to the below mentioned location to insert or configure the registry keys for LPM.
   NOTE: *OEM's need to configure the LPM settings per SATA port. Ports are numbered starting with zero (please refer to the desired platform EDS for the number of ports supported on your platform).*

   HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStorA\Parameters\Device

4. Now add the following registry keys under the registry location mentioned in step3, if they are not available (These registry keys are not available by default, they can be added by using automated scripts, .reg files, executable utilities, etc). If you find the below registry keys already available, you can modify the values for

desired support. Values are modified on a port by port basis so modify all ports that you wish the changes to be supported on. **

Per-port Setting:

Replace the '**X**' with the SATA port number to independently control HIPM/DIPM per port.

Host Initiated Power Management:
DWORD: ***Controller0PhyXHIPM***
Value: 0 = disable, **1 = enable (default)**
-- (Old key, DWORD: LPM)

Device Initiated Power Management:
DWORD: ***Controller0PhyXDIPM***
Value: 0 = disable, **1 = enable (default)**
-- (Old key, DWORD: DIPM)

Configure HIPM to use partial or slumber when the drive is in a D0 ACPI device state
DWORD: ***Controller0PhyXLPMState***
Value: **0 = Partial (default)**, 1 = Slumber
-- (Old key, DWORD: LPMState)

Configure HIPM to use partial or slumber when the drive is in a D3 ACPI device state (Device receives a start_stop_unit request: e.g. HDD idle spindown).
DWORD: ***Controller0PhyXLPMDstate***
Value: 0 = Partial, **1 = Slumber (default)**
-- (Old key, DWORD: LPMDState)

Controller-wide Setting:

This allows auto partial to slumber to be enabled. Actual setting of APS is controlled by the values below:
Auto Partial to Slumber:
DWORD: ***EnableAPS***
Value: 0 = disable, **1 = enable (default)**

***Warning:** If you edit the registry incorrectly, you can cause serious problems that may require you to reinstall your operating system. Intel does not guarantee that problems that are caused by editing the Registry incorrectly can be resolved.*

17.2 Runtime D3 (RTD3)

Intel® RST now supports Microsoft® Runtime Power Management (RTPM) framework. RTPM allows Windows® to manage the ACTIVE/IDLE power states for discrete target devices, such as hard disks, in an effort to reduce power consumption for mobile platforms.

RTD3 refers to the abililty to completely remove power from devices (D3cold) during long idle periods, while the system remains in S0.

RTD3 adheres to the following requirements:

1. OS is Windows* 8 or newer.
2. The SATA AHCI controller must be in AHCI mode.
3. Only HDD's, SSD's, and SSHD's attached to the AHCI controller on ports that are RTD3 capable are managed by RTPM.
4. Devices connected to hot-pluggable ports cannot be managed under RTPM.
5. Devices connected to external ports cannot be managed under RTPM.
6. Devices connected to ports with a mechanical presence switch cannot be managed under RTPM.
7. Devices connected to a Remapped PCIe port cannot be managed under RTPM.

NOTE: For system's that support RTD3, but are shipped with RST in 'RAID Ready' mode, it is suggested that RTD3 be disabled in the BIOS. This is to prevent end users from creating RAID volumes while RTD3 is enabled.

17.2.1 Adapter RTD3 Support

Current releases of Intel® Rapid Storage Technology do not support Adapter RTD3. This means that only the RTD3 supported devices will be placed into D3hot/D3cold. The Intel® RST driver does not support placing the SATA controller into a D3hot / D3cold state.

For additional information on configuration and usage of this feature, please refer to its documentation CDI/IBP document # 516865.

17.3 DEVSLP

Beginning with Intel® Rapid Storage Technology 12.5 release, support for a new SATA link power state was introduced, device sleep (DEVSLP). DEVSLP is a fourth and lowest link power state, coming after Slumber. The link will enter DEVSLP when all current IO have completed, the link is in the Slumber state and the DEVSLP idle timer has expired granting permission for the SATA controller to assert the DEVSLP signal. BIOS is responsible for configuring and enabling DEVSLP. The driver configurable settings for DEVSLP may be found in the section titled SATA Device Sleep (DEVSLP) Settings. For additional information on configuration and usage of this feature, please refer to the document CDI/IBP document # 516865.

Intel® RST supports DEVSLP for reduced power during long idle periods such as when the system is in InstantGo*. When DEVSLP is enabled, the Intel® RST driver will

support InstantGo* when requested by the OS on pass through devices on the SATA ports that support DEVSLP. InstantGo* is only supported on Windows* 8.1 and newer.

The following recommendation for Intel® Rapid Storage Technology DEVSLP Idle Timeout is taken from Section 4.6 of the Intel "Ultrabook™ Storage Power Management Recommendations White Papers" CDI/IBL #528428

When the system is in InstantGo*, the DEVSLP idle timeout should be set to maximize power savings. Because the I/O pattern while in InstantGo* is not deterministic, the DEVSLP idle time cannot be set to an arbitrarily low value, or else the power consumed by entering and exiting DEVLSP may be (on the average) greater than the power consumed by remaining in the next higher power state (Slumber). Instead, the idle timeout must be set to a value that delivers the best average power consumption. To achieve the best average power across a variety of configurations, the DEVSLP idle timeout should be set to equal the DEVSLP transition energy recoup time. The DEVSLP recoup time is the time in the next higher power state (Slumber) that consumes that same amount of power as entering and exiting DEVLSP. Using the recoup time ensures that (on the average) the device is not placed in DEVSLP before the energy consumed by the transition can be recouped.

Recoup time for a device to enter and then exit the next lowest power state relative to the device remaining in and then exiting from its current power state is calculated as follows:

$$recoup\ time = \frac{(next\ state\ entry\ energy + next\ state\ exit\ energy - current\ state\ exit\ energy)}{(current\ instate\ power - next\ state\ instate\ power)}$$

…where entry and exit transition energy is calculated as follows:

$$state\ transition\ energy\ =\ transition\ time\ *\ average\ power\ during\ transition$$

In the following example, DEVSLP recoup time is calculated for a hypothetical device with the following characteristics:

Table 17-1. DEVSLP Recoup Time

State/State Transition	In-State or Transition Time (S)	In-State or Transition Average Power (W)	In-State or Transition Energy (J)
Slumber	(1)	0.05	
Slumber resume transition	0.001	1.3	0.0013
DEVSLP entry transition	0.000	0	0.0000
DEVSLP	(2)	0.005	
DEVSLP resume transition	0.100	1.3	0.1300

1. Maximum time in Slumber is determined by the DEVSLP recoup time
2. Maximum time in DEVSLP is determined by the RTD3 recoup time (see next section)

Following the general case above, DEVSLP recoup time is calculated as follows:

$$DEVSLP\ recoup\ tim = \frac{DEVSLP\ entry\ energy + DEVSLP\ resume\ energy - Slumber\ resume\ energy}{Slumber\ instate\ power - DEVSLP\ instate\ power}$$

Substituting values from the table above:

$$DEVSLP\ recoup\ time = \frac{0\ J + \ .13\ J - \ .0013\ J}{.05\ W - \ .005\ W} = 2.86\ seconds$$

A device with these characteristics may stay in Slumber for 2.86 seconds and use the same power as would be consumed by transitioning to DEVSLP. Therefore, the recoup time is defined as 2.86 seconds, and the DEVSLP idle time-out when in InstantGo* should be set to 2.86 seconds.

For additional information on configuration and usage of these parameters, refer to the document CDI/IBP document # 516865

17.3.1 DEVSLP Registry Key Setting:

Per-port Settings:
This allows the OEM to customize the DEVSLP Idle Time Out value for InstantGo* enabled systems. When the OS enters InstantGo*, the driver configures the SATA controller to enter DEVSLP sooner to save power. This setting will temporarily override the BIOS configured value for the duration of the InstantGo* period. Upon exiting InstantGo*, the driver will restore the value the BIOS originally programmed:

Replace the '**X**' with the SATA port number to independently control the DEVSLP timeout value while in InstantGo*.

DEVSLP Device Idle Time Out Small in milliseconds:
DWORD: ***Controller0PhyXDevSlpDITOsmall***
Value: 0x1– 0x3FF0, default **0x0BB8** (values need to be entered as hex, equivalent decimal values are 1 to 16368 ms, default 3000 ms)

17.4 InstantGo* Device Notification Support

NOTE: Intel® Rapid Storage Technology support for InstantGo* is limited to platforms that support this feature. InstantGo* is a Microsoft feature and for more details, please consult Microsoft.

Beginning with Intel® Rapid Storage Technology 13.0, the Intel® RST driver also supports InstantGo* Notification on all InstantGo* Notification capable devices connected to the AHCI controller. The Intel® RST driver will notify devices when the

system is entering/exiting InstantGo*. This allows supported devices to change policy and be more aggressive in internal power management and power savings.

17.4.1 Requirements

- Devices must support the Advanced Power Management feature (APM) defined in the ATA* standard (ACS-3) and report support for APM levels.*
    - IDENTIFY DEVICE data Word 159 set to 0xA5A5 in the Vendor Specific area.**
- Platform Hardware and Devices must support the DEVSLP Feature.
    - Device supports the Device Sleep feature (per ATA IDENTIFY DEVICE command) IDENTIFY DEVICE data word 78 bit 8 is set to '1'.(i.e., resume from Device Sleep using COMWAKE).
- Devices must support DevSleep_to_ReducedPwrState (as indicated in Identify Device data).
- Supported on pass-thru devices (non-RAID member).

Intel recommendations for IHVs to support devices' INSTANTGO Notification requirements and APM levels can be found in "Ultrabook Storage Power Management Recommendations White Paper" on CDI/IBL #528428.

**InstantGo* Notification feature is currently supported on Intel Dalecrest (530) devices.

17.4.2 Detail Description

Intel® Rapid Storage Technology driver customizes InstantGo* Device Notification on a per device basis when the sytem is entering / exiting InstantGo*.

Once the Intel® RST driver receives notification from the OS that the system is going to enter or exit InstantGo*, Intel® RST driver will notify the device by using the APM (Advanced Power Management) mechanism defined in the ACS (ATA Command Set).

The Intel® RST driver will use a SET FEATURE command to send a hint of power/performance balance to the device. The hint value is 01 – FEh.

Values:

- FEh - max performance at the expense of power
- 01h - max power savings at the expense of performance
- 80h – defined for HDDs as max power savings, but cannot spin down, lower than 80h and the device is allowed to self spin down
- All other values are vendor specific

Intel® RST uses 10h as the default value for entering InstantGo*, and 80h is the default value Intel® RST uses for exiting InstantGo*. Values are customizable by using registry keys.

Note: Additionally, a device should be prepared for a power loss after any completed STANDBY IMMEDIATE command (see ACS-3) regardless of the link power state entered between the completion of a STANDBY IMMEDIATE command and the loss of power. This includes Active, Partial, Slumber and DevSleep link power states.

17.4.3 Registry Settings

InstantGo* Device Notification is enabled by default. The following registry keys can be used to disable InstantGo* Device Notification and/or to change default values on a per device basis.

Open the registry editor and navigate to this path:
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStorA\Parameters\Device

Add the following key to disable InstantGo* Notification for device on port '***X***':

DWORD: ***Controller0PhyXCsDeviceNotification***

Value: 0x0– 0x01, default **0x01** (1= enabled / 0=disabled)

The following Registry key will allow customizable APM levels to set the device to when the system enters and/or exits InstantGo*. This will only be done if InstantGo* Notification is enabled.

Open the registry editor and navigate to this path:

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStorA\Parameters\Device

Add the following registry key to customize Entry into InstantGo* notification :

DWORD: ***Controller0PhyXEnterCSApmLevel***

Values: **As below *(default is 10h)***

Add the following registry key to customize Exit from InstantGo* notification :

DWORD: ***Controller0PhyXExitCSApmLevel***

Values: **As below *(default is 80h)***

VALUES: **APM levels interpreted as follows:**

- FEh – Maximum performance mode
- 80h – Minimum power management without standby (e.g. balance between power savings and performance)
- 10h – High performance bursts, quick to low power (e.g. Windows* 8.1 InstantGo*)
- 01h – Minimum power consumption with standby

The requested APM levels persist across resets, but not power cycles. Intel® RST 13.0, and newer, supports this capability and will set the appropriate APM levels after power is applied to the devices (either power on or after resume from RTD3).

InstantGo is a MSFT feature and was formerly referred to as "Connected Standby".

18 Legacy RAID Option ROM and Utilities

There is a unified RAID Option ROM (.ffs or .bin) and RAID Utilities (RCfgSata.exe and RCmpSata.exe) beginning with the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology 9.6 and later release versions. This unified OROM package is supported on the platforms identified below and all later platform releases when enabled for RAID. With this RAID Option ROM, these platforms now support all RAID functionality based on the hardware capability.

18.1.1 General Requirements

Hardware

Only enabled on specific SKUs of the Intel® 8 / 9 Series chipset platforms:

- H87, H97, HM87, HM97
- Q87, QM87,
- Z87, Z97
- C226
- LPT-LP Premium
- Broadwell U/Y Premium

With one of the following Intel® Processors installed:

- Intel® Core™ Branded (i3, i5, and i7 processor families)
- Intel® Xeon® Processor family

Operating System

All supported Operating Systems for this release 131

19 HDD Password Support With RAID Volumes

Intel® Rapid Storage Technology supports password protected HDDs to be RAID array member disks and pass-thru disks. The product will rely on the BIOS implementing for most of the ATA Security support. There is a whitepaper available called "Implementing Intel® Matrix Storage Manager Compatible Support for ATA Security in BIOS" available on CDI that describes the necessary BIOS design for compatibility with the Intel Rapid Storage Technology. Rapid Storage Technology product will handle the RAID and hot-plug related behavior with regards to password protected disks.

19.1 HDD Password Use Cases

If at least one unlocked member disk and one locked member disk (with relevant data for the RAID array) are connected, then the RST Driver will reset the "offline disk member" status prior to a boot-time enumeration in the case that a member disk is unlocked by entering the correct password. The Intel® RST UI will display the locked disk as locked, and any member disks as offline.

Accelerated volumes containing a locked member disk will return to a normal online state upon transitioning from S4 to S1 and entering the correct password to unlock the volume/disk.

Scenario	Action	Result	Comments
RAID1 Volume Disk 1 – Locked Disk 2 - Unlocked Volume – Locked (Both disks have relevant data)	Remove Disk 1 (locked disk)	Volume becomes unlocked and Degraded. User can rebuild volume unto a new unlocked disk.	The user had authority to access Disk 2 which has the same data as Disk 1, by removing the locked drive the user can access Disk 2.
RAID1 Volume Disk 1 – Locked Disk 2 – Unlocked Volume – Degraded Disk 1 has old data and caused the volume to go Degraded.	None	N/A	The user has access to Disk 2 because the data on Disk 1 is old and irrelevant.

Scenario	Action	Result	Comments
RAID5 Volume Disk 1 – Locked Disk 2 – Unlocked Disk 3 – Unlocked Volume – Locked (All disks have relevant data to Volume)	Remove Disk 1 (locked disk)	Volume becomes unlocked and Degraded. User can rebuild volume onto a new unlocked disk.	The user had authority to access Disk 2 and Disk 3 which has all the data needed to rebuild the volume, by removing the locked drive the user can access Disk 2 and Disk 3 as a Degraded Volume.
Intel® RRT Volume Master Disk – Locked Recovery Disk - Locked (external port docking station) Volume – Locked (Both disks have relevant data)	User connects laptop to docking station and unlocks Recovery disk and Master Disk and boots. Then user takes the laptop from the docking station and leaves the external drive connected to power	The recovery drive can be connected to a new laptop and the information can be used to rebuild an Intel® RRT volume if the power was maintained, because the drive is still in an unlocked state.	Similar situation to a user leaving a laptop unlocked and unattended.

19.2 Unlocking Password Protected Disks

The ability to unlock password protected drives from within the Intel® RST GUI during OS runtime has been removed beginning with ***RST production release version 11.6.0.1030***. Users will only be able to unlock password protected drives from within the system BIOS. Please consult the system manufacturer for instructions on BIOS use for this feature.

20 Intel® Smart Response Technology – Dual Drive Configuration

¥Note: This feature requires that the SATA controller be set to RAID mode via the system BIOS. There is no support in AHCI mode.

Intel® Smart Response Technology is an Intel® RST caching-related feature that improves computer system performance and lowers power consumption for systems running on battery power while in Maximized mode. It allows OEMs to configure computer systems with an SSD used as cache memory between the hard disk drive and system memory. This provides the advantage of having a hard disk drive (or a RAID volume) for maximum storage capacity while delivering an SSD-like overall system performance experience. Intel® Smart Response Technology caching is implemented as a single drive letter solution; no additional drive letter is required for the SSD device used as cache. Beginning with Intel® Rapid Storage Technology 13.0 minimum cache device size requirement is 16GB (1000x1000=1MB).

£Note: This feature is only supported on designated RAID enabled SKUs; for SKU support see "Requirements and Limitations".

20.1 Overview

20.1.1.1 Driver/OROM updates of Accelerated systems:

- Updating a **production version** of the driver to a newer **production version** of the driver requires a **production version** of the 10.5 or later OROM (***Note: the system will be limited to the features available to the OROM that is installed on the system***)
- If using OROM/UEFI utilities (RcfgSata) to create/configure an SRT volume, cache creation size restrictions exist, therefore, a 13.0 or newer OROM/UEFI and Rcfgsata utility would need to be used to create a 16GB cache volume.

- Updating the OROM to a newer version requires that the driver version be updated to a driver version from the same release package of the OROM or newer.

Table 17-1: Example of driver/OROM compatibility

	OROM Version			
Driver Version	10.5.0 PV	10.5.1 PV	10.6.0 PV	12.0.0 PV
10.5.0 PV	O	**X**	**X**	**X**
10.5.1 PV	S	O	**X**	**X**
10.6.0 PV	S	S	O	**X**
12.0.0 PV	S	S	S	O

- X = this configuration is not supported
- O = this configuration is supported and is optimal for the driver and OROM
- S = this configuration is supported; however, it is limited to the features of the driver that was originally released with that OROM version. E.g. if the 11.0.0 PV driver is installed/updated to a system running the 10.5.0 PV OROM, the system will be limited to the features of the 10.5.0 OROM. Any new features associated with the 11.0.0 PV release may not be enabled with this configuration.

20.1.1.2 Hot removal (hot unplug) of Maximized Accelerated components:

- DO NOT physically hot unplug any component of the Accelerated system that is in Maximized mode. Before removal of either the Accelerated disk/volume or the "Cache SSD" the user must disable (turn-off) Acceleration. This will eliminate the potential loss of any data that is being accessed or has not been flushed from the cache to the Accelerated disk/volume.

20.1.2 Requirements and Limitations

Architectural Limitations:

5MB unallocated disk space at the max LBA of the disk: There is a limitation associated with the HDD and SSD when enabling Acceleration. When a system is first booted with no RAID volumes or no SRT enabled on a disk, there is no Intel® Rapid Storage Technology configuration information stored on the disks (this configuration information is called RAID metadata). This is true for all disks in the system that are in the pass-through state. Whenever a RAID volume is created or a disk is accelerated with SRT, the Intel® RST driver writes metadata to the disks that stores all the configuration information (metadata) associated with the disks. The driver locates the max LBA of the disk and determines if the final ~5MB of space is un-partitioned unallocated space. If the space is un-partitioned, the driver will reserve this space for the Intel® RST driver metadata. This reserved space will be hidden from the host so that the host will never be able to access this space and overwrite the Intel® RST driver metadata. The max LBA presented to the host will be the full capacity of the disk minus the 5MB offset from the max LBA.

In those cases when the user attempts to create a RAID volume or enable SRT on a disk that the driver detects a partition within the max LBA minus the 5MB offset, the operation will fail. The user will not be able to complete the RAID creation or the enable SRT operation. In order to complete the action, the user would have to use the appropriate Windows tool to delete the partition or shrink the size of the partition. **WARNING!** Deleting a partition can result in loss of user data. Ensure that there is no data on the partition that is required to be preserved without backing it up somewhere else.

System Requirements:

For a system to support Intel® Smart Response Technology it must have the following:

- One of the following platforms (RAID enabled SKUs):
    - Intel® 9 Series Chipset SATA RAID Controller:
        - Broadwell LP U/Y: Premium
        - Desktop: Z97, H97
        - Mobile: HM97
    - Intel® 8 Series Chipset SATA RAID Controller:
        - Mobile: QM87, HM87
        - Desktop: Q87, Z87, H87
        - WS/Server: C226
        - Lynx Point LP: "Premium I/O"
- CPU:
    - Intel® Core™ i3, i5, or i7 processor (only works on production processors that have the 'Core' or 'Xeon' brand name)
    - Intel® Xeon® brand processors (only works on production processors that have the 'Core' or 'Xeon' brand name)
- Operating system:
    - All supported OS for this release*.

        **UEFI Driver support only available on 64-bit OS versions.*

- System BIOS with the Intel® Smart Response Technology caching bit (bit 9) of the ***'Intel RST Feature Capabilities'*** register in the SATA controller MMIO space enabled (set to 1; the default setting is 0).
- System BIOS with SATA mode set to RAID enabled
- System BIOS that is PCI 3.0 and PMM (POST Memory Management) compliant to allow the OROM to handle dirty shutdowns of Accelerated disks/volumes;
    - ***Legacy OROM*:** BIOS PMM must be able to allocate a minimum of 130MB of temporary, non-aligned, extended memory to the Legacy OROM
    - ***UEFI Driver*:** BIOS UEFI global boot services must be able to allocate 130 MB of temporary, non-aligned, extended memory to the UEFI Driver.

- Intel® RST driver and OROM installed from the production Intel® RST 10.5 version release or later production releases
- Flash part must budget the following space for the Intel® RST OROM:
  - Image file size ~119KB
  - Runtime size ~41.5KB

"Cache SSD" Requirements:

For an SSD to meet the Intel® Smart Response Technology "Cache SSD" criteria it must have the following:

- 16GB minimum capacity (1000x1000=1MB) as calculated by most SSD vendors

  OR
- 14.9GB minimum capacity (1024x1024=1MB) will be used and calculated by the Intel® RST UI and Configuration utilities

  The Intel RST product recognizes a device as an SSD if its IDD data structure word 217 = 0x01

Feature Limitations of Intel® Smart Response Technology:

- No support for this feature on Windows XP (all versions)
- A total of only one pass-through disk (RAID Ready system) or RAID volume can be 'Accelerated' per computer system
- Accelerated Volume criteria:
  - Accelerated RAID volumes are limited to 31.5TB or less
  - RAID levels 0, 1, 5, and 10
    - No IRRT volumes allowed to be accelerated
  - All array member disks must be HDDs
    - No arrays with SSD member disks allowed to be accelerated
- No Acceleration of a RAID volume that is one of the volumes of a Matrix array (multiple volumes on a single array)
- The cache device is attached to an internal SATA port, or REMAPPED PCIe slot.
- The SSD to be used as the "Cache SSD" must not be a system/boot disk.

20.1.3 Acceleration Modes

There are three 'Acceleration' modes of operations for Intel® Smart Response Technology caching.

Acceleration Mode Values and Limitations

Mode	Performance	Separation Safe	Data Caching
Off	No Acceleration	N/A	N/A

Enhanced	Boot-time, Run-time reads, Paging	Yes	Write-Through
Maximized	Boot-time, Run-time reads & writes, Paging	No	Write-Back

20.2 Dynamic Cache Sharing Between SRT and Rapid Start

Note: Starting with RST13.2 release, Dynamic cache sharing with Rapid Start Technology will not be supported for Broadwell Mobile Platforms.

When implementing both Intel® Rapid Start and Intel® Smart Response Technology with RST13.0 release or later, the Rapid Start partition is dynamically created.* No extra steps are necessary for setting aside a special partition for the Rapid Start Feature. The size of the partition dynamically created is dependent on the size of the SSD Cache Volume and the DRAM on the system:

- For SSD Cache Size of < 18.6GB, The RST driver will dynamically reserve space for the Rapid Start Feature in the Cache Volume equivalent to the size of the DRAM on the system up to 4GB.

- For SSD Cache Size of > 18.6GB, The RST driver will dynamically reserve space for the Rapid Start Feature in the Cache Volume equivalent to the size of the DRAM on the system up to 8GB.

The assumption is that the OEM/user has properly met all the requirements for Intel® Rapid Start Technology. ***There are NO instructions in this document for configuring the platform for Intel® Rapid Start Technology***. For detailed configuration and setup requirements for Intel® Rapid Start Technology please contact your Intel representative for assistance.

20.3 Build a New System with Disk/Volume Acceleration Enabled

Note: This section requires that the computer system's Intel® SATA AHCI/RAID controller be set to RAID mode via the system BIOS. This applies to both the 'New System' and the 'Build System' when using CLI 32/64 utilities.

Note: There is no ability to enable Acceleration while in the OROM UI. Acceleration must be enabled either in the Intel® RST UI or CLI 32/64 utilities during OS runtime or the RCfgSata CLI utility (as described below) if required to do so pre-OS. The OROM UI only allows disabling of Acceleration.

20.3.1 Prepare New Computer

The following instructions are for preparing a brand new computer system to be built with disk/volume Acceleration enabled.

- **Meet System Requirements**

For Acceleration requirements, see section Requirements and Limitations. Ensure that the targeted system meets all the requirements for Acceleration.

- **Determine Type of System Configuration**

Although the OEM can configure a system any number of possible configurations, the following are four of the most common configurations. Config1 will be used in this setup and configuration example detailed in the next few sections.

1. ***Config1: OS installed on an Accelerated pass-through disk; RAID Ready system***
2. Config2: OS installed on an Accelerated RAID volume (RAID 0, 1, 5, or 10)
3. Config3: OS installed on a non-Accelerated pass-through disk with an Accelerated data disk; RAID Ready system
4. Config4: OS installed on a non-Accelerated RAID volume with an Accelerated data disk

20.3.2 Setup the HW for Installing the OS to an Accelerated Disk/Volume

20.3.2.1 Install HDD(s)

1. Select the required HDD(s) needed for the type of system configuration
2. Locate SATA port(s) and attach HDD(s). (**Note** the port number of the pass-through HDD to be used for the OS system disk.)
3. Install any other HW peripheral desired for the system configuration (e.g. ODD)

20.3.2.2 Install SSD Meeting Intel® Smart Response Technology Caching Criteria

1. Select an SSD that has a minimum capacity of 16 GB.
2. Locate a SATA port that is configured as 'Internal' and attach the SSD. Note the port number of the SSD.

20.3.2.3 Configure the SSD to be the "Cache SSD"

This section will step through the process for setting up the SSD and HDD for Config1 where the OS will be installed on a single pass-through HDD that will be accelerated in Maximized mode.

- **If Using RCfgSata**

1. Copy the RCfgSata tool from the RST 13.0 release or newer for PCIe SSD cache devices to a UEFI bootable media (e.g. USB thumb drive) and attach the media

device to the targeted new system (*for non-RST PCIe SSD systems the tool also runs in DOS*)

2. Boot to the UEFI bootable media *(or DOS)*

3. Setup the HDD:

   At the command line type: **rcfgsata /c Sys_Vol /ds 0** (where 'Sys_Vol' is the logical name of the single pass-through disk and '0' is the Internal configured port where the single physical disk is located)

4. Setup the SSD to be the "Cache SSD":

   At the command line type: **rcfgsata /c Cache_Dev /ds 3** (Where 'Cache_Dev' is the logical name representing the "Cache SSD" and '3' is the Internal configured port location of the physical SSD. (**Note**: if the SSD is larger than 64GB, the following command will be required: **rcfgsata /c Cache_Dev /ds 3 /s 14.9**; where **/s** is for the size of the caching region in GB (14.9 (1024mb = 1GB) or 16 GB (1000mb = 1GB) is the minimum and 64 GB is maximum supported size)

   OR

   4a. To configure the SSD with both Cache and User Data regions it must be done in the following order:

      1. User Data region: **rcfgsata /c SSD_UserData /ds 3 /s 4** (where 4 is the size of the user data region of the SSD)

      2. Cache region: **rcfgsata /c Cache_Dev /ds 3** (this will default to the remaining capacity of the SSD) (where 64 is max size of 64GB and 16GB is the minimum)

      3. Pre-configure the pass-through disk (OS system disk) for Acceleration:

         At the command line type: **rcfgsata /accel Sys_Vol Cache_Dev max** (Where Sys_Vol is the single disk to be Accelerated, 'Cache_Dev' is the "Cache SSD", and 'max' indicates the Acceleration mode is 'Maximized' .

         Note: *The disk/volume is not actually Accelerated until the system is booted and the pre-configured Accelerated disk/volume and the pre-configured "Cache SSD" are enumerated by the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology driver.*

5. Reboot; the 'New System' is now prepared and ready for Windows OS installation to a pre-configured Accelerated pass-through disk.

20.3.3 If Using RSTCLI32/64 (compatible with WinPE)

Locate a Widows system that meets all the system requirements for Acceleration; let's call this the 'Build System'. (Note: The 'Build System' should not have any SSD's or HDD's already configured for Acceleration. If so, remove Acceleration and reset any SSD configured as a "Cache SSD" to an Available SSD.)

1. Locate the HDD that will be used as the single pass-through disk that will have the OS installed and Accelerated on the new system and attach it to an unused SATA port on the 'Build System'

2. Locate the SSD that will be used as the "Cache SSD" on the new system and attach it to an 'Internal' configured SATA port on the 'Build System'. (Note: the 'Build System' cannot already have an SSD configured as a "Cache SSD")

3. Boot the 'Build System' into Windows (login as administrator) and launch a DOS prompt command line. If not already done so, copy a version of the RSTCLI32/64 application from the RST 11.5 Release or later to a directory on the 'Build System'.

4. At the DOS prompt command line (note that rstcli and rstcli64 are interchangeable in the below example).

   Accelerate a single pass-through HDD using the --disk-to-accel command:

5. Setup the SSD to be the "Cache SSD":

   At the DOS Prompt, type: **rstcli --accelerate --createCache --SSD 0-Y-0-0 --cache-size Z** (Where you need to replace 'Y' with the SATA port number on the 'Build' system where the SSD is physically located, and replace '**Z**' with a number representing the capacity in GB of the NVCache volume size with 14.9GB being the minimum and 64GB being the maximum)

6. Accelerate the pass-through disk (this is the disk planned to be the OS system disk for the 'New System'):

   At the DOS Prompt, type: **rstcli --accelerate --setAccelConfig --disk-to-accel 0-Z-0-0 --mode maximized** (Where the single pass-through disk is located a SATA port number 'Z' and 'maximized' represents that it is in Maximized Acceleration mode.)

   Accelerate a multi-disk RAID volume (i.e. RAID1) using --volume-to-accel command:

7. Setup the SSD to be the "Cache SSD":

   At the DOS Prompt, type: **rstcli --accelerate --createCache --SSD 0-Y-0-0 --cache-size Z** (Where you need to replace 'Y' with the port number on the 'Build' system where the SSD is physically located, and replace '**Z**' with a number representing the capacity in GB of the NVCache volume size with 16GB being the minimum and 64GB being the maximum)

8. Accelerate the RAID volume (this is the RAID volume planned to be the OS system disk for the 'New System'):

   At the DOS Prompt, type: **rstcli --accelerate --setAccelConfig --volume-to-accel SysVolume --mode enhanced** (Where **SysVolume** is the logical name of the RAID volume to be accelerated and 'enhanced' represents that it is in Enhanced Acceleration mode.)

   Power down the 'Build System' and physically remove the "Cache SSD" and the Associated single pass-through disk that are targeted for the new system. (**Note:** To remain valid, the preconfigured "Cache SSD" and Accelerated HDD must be installed as a pair in a system that has no Accelerated Disk/Volume or "Cache SSD" already installed.)

In the 'New System', install the "Cache SSD" and the Associated pass-through disk onto the desired SATA ports (**Note**: the SSD must be installed to an Internal SATA port or a remapped PCIe port).

The 'New System' is now prepared for OS installation to an Accelerated single pass-through disk

20.3.4 If Using the Intel® RST UI

This process is similar to using RSTCLI32/64

1. Repeat the steps 1 – 4 from previous section "**If Using RSTCLI32/64 (compatible with WinPE)**"
2. Launch the Intel® RST UI
3. Click on the 'Performance' tab at the top of the UI and click the Enable acceleration link
    a. If multiple SSDs on the build system, select the SSD that will be used in the 'New System'
    b. Select the size to be allocated on the SSD for cache memory; options are:
        i. 16 GB – minimum required
        ii. Full disk capacity (up to 64 GB)
        iii. Custom
    c. Select the HDD to be accelerated that will be used in the 'New System'
    d. Select the mode of Acceleration and click [OK]
4. Power down the 'Build System'. Remove the "Cache SSD" and the Associated single pass-through disk that are targeted for the 'New System'.
5. On the 'New System', install them into the desired SATA ports (**Note**: the SSD must be installed to an Internal SATA port or a remapped PCIe port).
6. The 'New System' is now prepared for OS installation to an Accelerated single pass-through disk.
7. Skip the next section and go to section for OS installation instructions.

20.3.4.1 Install HDD(s)

1. Select the required HDD(s) needed for the type of system configuration
2. Locate SATA port(s) and attach HDD(s). (**Note** the port number of the pass-through HDD to be used for the OS system disk.)
3. Install any other HW peripheral desired for the system configuration (e.g. ODD)

20.3.4.2 Enabling Intel® Rapid Start with Intel® Smart Response Technology Caching

Note: Starting with RST13.2 release, Dynamic cache sharing with Rapid Start Technology will not be supported for Broadwell Mobile Platforms.

Beginning with the Intel® RST 13.0 Release version, Intel® RST dynamically allocates a portion of cache on the cache device to share with Intel® Rapid Start. No action is necessary to create the Intel® Rapid Start partition on platforms that support both Intel® Smart Response and Intel® Rapid Start technologies, when both features are enabled.

- Have the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology driver and OROM installed (the 13.0 or later production versions of each)

20.4 Installing the OS to a New System Prepared for Disk/Volume Acceleration

To install the OS to a disk/volume previously configured for Acceleration, the RST driver installation files will be required. Download the **f6** zipped archive file (from the RST 10.5 Release or later kit) and extract the files to a media that can be accessed during OS installation (e.g. USB thumb drive).

20.4.1 For Acceleration Components Pre-configured Via RCfgSata (DOS or UEFI Shell)

If the Accelerated disk and the Cache SSD" were prepared using the RCfgSata utility then all that should be required is to boot the system to the Windows OS installation media located in the ATAPI ODD.

20.4.2 For Acceleration Components Pre-configured Via RSTCLI 32/64 (Windows)

1. If not done already, locate the desired SATA port(s) of the 'New System' and install the disk/volume to be Accelerated that was previously configured on the 'Build System'.

2. Locate the desired Internal configured SATA port of the 'New System' and install the SSD that was previously configured on the 'Build System'

20.4.2.1 OS Installation

1. Boot to the Windows OS installation media (ensure that the media with the RST driver, e.g. USB thumb drive, is not installed in the system during boot)

2. When prompted to load driver, insert the RST driver installation media and click the Load Driver link.

3. Load the RST driver for your computer system

4. The disk/volume with Acceleration enabled, should now be available in the list of storage drives.

5. Select the Acceleration enabled disk/volume and continue with the normal OS installation procedure from this point.

Once the installation is complete nothing else is required to enable Acceleration. Acceleration should be enabled on the disk/volume that was configured via the RCfgSata/RSTCLI 32/64 tool or RST UI.

20.5 OEM System Manufacturing and Intel® Smart Response Technology

Note: This section requires that the computer system's Intel® SATA AHCI/RAID controller be set to RAID mode via the system BIOS. This applies to the 'Build System' when using RSTCLI 32/64. In the example below, RSTCLI is used but can be interchangeable with RSTCLI64

Note: The following procedures are for setting up a single disk (RAID mode pass-through disk) in Acceleration mode with an OS image pre-configured and installed. OEMs need only move and install the imaged Accelerated disk along with its Associated "Cache SSD" as a pair to a properly configured computer system. The system will boot up with the Acceleration mode enabled.

20.5.1 Imaging an OS onto a Pre-Configured Acceleration-enabled HDD

Note: This section allows the OEM to pre-configure an HDD/SSD Accelerated pair and image the OS onto that Accelerated HDD. The HDD and SSD pair can then be removed from the manufacturing system and assembled together in the final system to be shipped to the end-user.

Note: The HDD and SSD must remain together at all times as an Accelerated pair.

- **What You Need (Build Environment)**

1. Computer platform (call it the 'Build System') that supports Intel® Smart Response Technology

2. HDD (targeted for Acceleration and OS image) and SSD (targeted for "Cache SSD")

3. Media with bootable WinPE environment (USB thumb drive, ODD, etc) that has:

   a) Intel® RST driver (compatible with RAID OROM on 'Build Platform'); driver must be loaded during WinPE boot or loaded using the ***drvload*** command.

   b) RSTCLI/RSTCLI64 executable

c) The OS image

- **Bring up the Build Environment**

1. Attach SSD to an Internal SATA port on the 'Build System'
2. Attach the HDD to a SATA port on the 'Build System'
3. Boot into WinPE with Intel® RST driver, RSTCLI/RSTCLI64, and OS image
4. If the Intel® RST driver is not loaded, load the driver

- **Pre-Configured the SSD/HDD for Acceleration**

1. Prepare the SSD to be the "Cache SSD": at the command prompt/> type ***rstcli –-accelerate –-createCache –-SSD 0-Y-0-0 –-cache-size Z*** (where **Y** represents the port location of the targeted SSD, **Z** is the size of the Cache Volume)
2. Enable Acceleration on the single HDD: at command prompt/> type ***rstcli –-accelerate --setAccelConfig --disk-to-accel 0-Z-0-0 --mode maximized*** (where Z = the SATA port location of the HDD to be Accelerated)

- **Complete the Pre-Configuration Process**

1. Use your imaging program (e.g. Ghost) to transfer the OS image to the Accelerated HDD that you just setup in the steps above (**Note**: the OS image must have Acceleration enabled; select one of the methods in one of the sub-sections of 17.2 to setup your master OS image with Acceleration enabled)
2. Once the imaging process has completed, the Accelerated pair (HDD + SSD) can be moved to a supported platform to build a fresh new system with Intel® Smart Response Technology already pre-configured
3. This completes the process

20.5.2 Enabling Acceleration post end user OOBE

OEM's may wish to enable acceleration of a system preconfigured for Intel® Smart Response Technology as the last step of the customer OOBE. This process allows the OEM to make minimal changes to their manufacturing environment. All the OEM would have to do is:

1. Setup the system for Acceleration of the OS system disk
    a. Make sure that along with the HDD for the system disk, that an SSD is installed in the system
    b. System must meet chipset and CPU requirements for Intel® Smart Response Technology
    c. System BIOS is properly configured with the Intel® RST RAID OROM and the SATA controller set to RAID mode
    d. Image the HDD with Intel® RST RAID driver installed

2. Sysprep the system for OOBE

3. Once system boots for first time after OOBE automatically run a script in the background to enable Acceleration of the system disk; see an example batch file in the next bullet:

- **Step 1: Setup the system for Acceleration of the OS Disk**

- **Prepare system HW**

1. At least one HDD (for the OS image) and one SSD (for the cache device; must be installed to an Internal configured SATA port)

2. Ensure that system BIOS has a properly integrated Intel® RST OROM that supports Intel® Smart Response Technology. Set the SATA controller to RAID mode via the system BIOS

- **Transfer OS Image the HDD**

1. Prepare the final master OS image with Intel® RST RAID driver (the OS image system must have been built on a system with the RAID mode set in the BIOS so that the Intel® RST RAID driver is the installed storage driver)

2. Transfer the RST RAID-enabled master OS image to the HDD in the new system (use whatever is current OEM process, e.g. Ghost)

- **Step 2: System preparation for OOBE**

OEM should run their normal process to prepare the system for the end-user's initial boot-up and login of the system (OOBE).

- **Step 3: Auto-run a script to enable Acceleration of the OS disk**

Acceleration script for post OOBE using the RSTCLI 32/64

1. Because the RSTCLI 32/64 utilities are not supported in the end-user environment, the script should delete the utility upon completion or the utility shall be located on the computer in a location that is not accessible to the end user

2. Once the system boots for first time after OOBE, automatically run a script in the background to enable Acceleration of the system disk; see an example batch file in the next bullet:

3. **Accel_SysDisk.bat** (for example this batch file with the following commands included in it will create a Cache Volume with capacity of 24GB, then Accelerate the system disk in Maximized mode; **Note that the command parameters are case sensitive**):

rstcli --accelerate --createCache --SSD 0-1-0-0 --cache-size 24

rstcli --accelerate --setAccelConfig --disk-to-accel 0-0-0-0 --mode maximized

exit

EOF

*The first command line prepares the SSD on port 1 as the cache device; 0-**1**-0-0 = the SATA port location of the SSD, and **24** = the size of the cache volume on the SSD.*

*The second command line accelerates the system disk on port 0 (0-**0**-0-0) in Maximized mode using the SSD on port 1 (0-1-0-0) as the cache device;*

Once the script using the 2 bolded command lines above completes, the system should be in Maximized Acceleration mode.

20.6 OEM System Manufacturing and Cache Pre-load for Intel® Smart Response Technology

The cache pre-load feature was developed to help OEMs mass produce systems configured with Intel® Smart Response Technology enabled with a cache that is out-of-the-box in a near optimal performance state.

The Intel® Smart Response Technology caching solution is a learning solution. This means that when the cache is initially enabled, there is little to no data being cached. This initially results in many cache misses causing the host to have to access the HDD for I/O requests. However, over time, the caching policies of Intel® SRT places data in the cache that is accessed often. So after some time the cache will be loaded with often used data giving the system its optimal or maximum performance configuration.

The problem with this is that when a new system is first used by an end user, the system will have no data cached and thus the performance gains expected of the cache will be small. Depending on use, it could take days of use before the end user starts seeing the expected performance as the cache learns what data should be stored in the cache.

To overcome this initial poor performance gain is to ship the system in the box with the cache already loaded with user data. This could be accomplished in one of two ways. The OEM could configure the system then spend weeks using the system so that it learns what data to load into the cache, or the OEM could preload data into the cache that is likely to be used immediately by the end user.

The following sections dictate the process that the Intel® SRT solution uses to pre-load the cache to be shipped in the box ready for an optimal OOBE performance-wise. It will detail the steps for setting up a system with an Accelerated single pass-through disk with a pre-loaded cache.

20.6.1 Requirements

1. Must meet all Intel® Smart Response Technology requirements
2. Intel® RST 11.1 production release or later (includes 11.1 driver and 11.1 OROM)

3. Optional: The NVCacheScripts.zip file from the RST SW kit on VIP

20.6.2 Process

The NV cache loading process is a three stage process (assuming that SRT caching has already been enabled in **Enhanced** mode):

1. Setup system for Cache loading: Modify the SRT default Caching policy via the Registry and reboot.

2. Start and complete the NV cache content loading.

3. Return the system to the SRT default Caching policy and cleanup (remove files and shutdown)

20.6.2.1 Setup System for Cache Loading

The following steps are assuming the use of the cache loading scripts provided with the Intel® RST SW kit.

1. Configure an Accelerated system in **Enhanced** mode and install the OS and desired applications that will be shipped on this system

2. If Intel® Rapid Start Technology is to be used, install and configure it now*

3. Download NvCacheScripts archive (.zip) and RAID configuration utility (RSTCLI.exe) from Intel VIP site (use same kit as the Intel® RST driver and OROM/UEFI driver that will be shipping on the systems)

4. If not already exist, create the C:\Intel directory on the system disk

    a. Copy the NvCacheScripts.zip file to this directory.

5. Unzip the archive (open it and select to extract it to the default directory which should be C:\Intel\NvCacheScripts\). The following files should be extracted into the directory:

    - cache_cleanup.reg
    - cache_insert.reg
    - Readme.txt
    - step1_RegistrySetup.bat
    - step2_LoadNVCache.bat

    a. Copy RSTCLI.exe into the directory

6. Open a command prompt window (needs to be run as administrator in Windows 8) and change directories to C:\Intel\NvCacheScripts\

7. Run the script **step1_registrysetup.bat** (this will change the caching policy for cache loading then reboot the system for the new policy to take effect)
   Note: this script needs to be edited or replaced to fit your specific requirements and system configuration

8. Once the system reboots, it is ready for loading of the cache

   *Rapid Start/Dynamic Cache Sharing feature support removed for Broadwell Mobile Platforms and newer

20.6.2.2 Cache Loading and Cleanup

1. Run the script **step2_LoadNVCache.bat,** this will:
   a. Copy selected files to the cache
   b. Change Acceleration mode if required
   c. Cleanup the registry to return to the default SRT caching policy
   d. Cleanup the cache loading directory and reboot the system
2. The system now is ready to be shipped with the cache loaded for optimal performance out of the box

20.6.2.3 Scripting Examples for RSTCLI/RSTCLI64

These are just example scripts provided by Intel® RST. The scripts should be edited to meet specific OEM manufacturing requirements.

The following scripts assume the following system conditions:

1. The OEM has already configured the system in Enhanced Acceleration mode
2. The system HDD is located on SATA port 0 (0-0-0-0)
3. The SSD/mSATA is located on SATA port 1 (0-1-0-0)
4. The CLI tool, the scripts, and registry editor files are located in directory C:\Intel\NvCacheScripts\

step1_RegistrySetup.bat

```
REM ************************************************
REM *                    PART 1:                   *
REM ************************************************
REM Edit the registry to set the system  up for Nv Cache content
REM insertion and Startup Menu. This step in the script will
REM automatically call the cache_insert.reg file to update the registry.
REM ************************************************
    regedit /s C:\Intel\NvCacheScripts\cache_insert.reg

        REM ************************************************
REM *                    PART 2:                   *
REM ************************************************
REM ************************************************
REM This step will reboot the system for the cache insert policy
REM change to take effect and will automatically start the cache
REM loading script to begin copying data to the cache.
```

```
REM ***********************************************
    shutdown -f -r -c "Rebooting for SRT NV Cache loading"

EOF
```

cache_insert.reg

```
Windows Registry Editor Version 5.00

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStorA\Parameters\Device]
"NvCachePolicy"=dword:0

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Run]
"Rstcli"="C:\\Intel\\NvCacheScripts\\step2_LoadNvCache.bat"
```

step2_LoadNvCache.bat

```
REM ***********************************************
REM This section is used for content that needs to
REM have the longest eviction path as possible.
REM This will put the content into the BOOT LRU.
REM
REM Begin loading user application data into NV cache.
REM Make sure the drive selected is Accelerated i.e.
REM "C:\".
REM ***********************************************
    C:\Intel\NvCacheScripts\rstcli.exe --accelerate --loadCache
    C:\windows\system32\winevt\logs\*.evtx

REM ***********************************************
REM To make sure the content in the BOOT LRU doesn't
REM get evicted, a time delay can be used.
REM This is only needed if the user content is >1.7GB
REM and can be loaded in less than 60s.
REM The time can be "fine-tuned" to adjust for a
REM particular system.  Below is the max to ensure
REM BOOT LRU content doesn't get evicted.
REM ***********************************************
    timeout 60
REM ***********************************************
REM Finish loading content from the Accelerated disk into NV cache.
REM
REM ***********************************************
    C:\Intel\NvCacheScripts\rstcli.exe --accelerate --loadCache
    "C:\Program Files" --recurse

    C:\Intel\NvCacheScripts\rstcli.exe --accelerate --loadCache
    "C:\Program Files (x86)" --recurse

    C:\Intel\NvCacheScripts\rstcli.exe --accelerate --loadCache
    C:\ProgramData --recurse

    C:\Intel\NvCacheScripts\rstcli.exe --accelerate --loadCache
    C:\Windows --recurse
REM ***********************************************
```

```
REM Switch the Accelerated disk/volume to Maximized mode.
REM ***********************************************
    C:\Intel\NvCacheScripts\rstcli.exe --accelerate --setAccelConfig
    --disk-to-accel 0-0-0-0 --mode maximized
REM ***********************************************
REM Clean up the registry and shutdown to return the caching
REM policy to the default runtime configuration.
REM ***********************************************
    Regedit /s C:\Intel\NvCacheScripts\cache_cleanup.reg
    shutdown -f -r -c "NV Cache loading complete"

EOF
```

Note: 'C:\ProgramData' directory is a hidden directory

cache_cleanup.reg

```
Windows Registry Editor Version 5.00
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStorA\Parameters
\Device]
"NvCachePolicy"=-

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Run]
"Rstcli"=-

EOF
```

Note: These are just examples that demonstrate the *process. They can* be edited by each OEM for their specific requirement or can be used as a guideline to create OEM-specific scripts.

20.6.3 Replicating the Accelerated HDD and SSD for Mass Production

Now that system has pre-loaded the cache, the OEM can consider the images on the HDD and SSD to be the gold images for that Accelerated system. These disks can now be mass produced (replicated) and paired into systems and the HDD and SSD will be 'Associated' by the Intel® RST OROM/UEFI Driver upon first boot up as an accelerated pair.

20.6.3.1 Rules and Limitations

The disk image replication process should not itself cause data to be loaded into the cache. This could cause the cache to become full and evict cached data from the gold cache image. To prevent this, the OEM must employ an image copy tool that only uses "block copying" and not "file copying".

Once the disks are duplicated they can be paired at a later time and installed in systems on the manufacturing line. Any SSD and any HDD can be paired because the Intel® RST OROM/UEFI Driver will fix the metadata on both the SSD and the HDD the very first time they are booted together after the replication process.

21 Intel® Smart Response Technology Hybrid Drive Accelerator

¥Note: This feature is supported only on Premium SKUs and is supported in both RAID and AHCI mode.

Intel® Smart Response Technology for Hybrid Drives is an Intel® RST caching-related feature that improves computer system performance and lowers power consumption for systems running on battery power. SSHDs integrate NAND flash with traditional hard drive storage. SSHDs allow OEMs to configure computer systems with the NAND portion used as cache memory between the hard drive portion of the SSHD and . This provides the advantage of having a hard disk drive for maximum storage capacity while delivering an SSD-like overall system performance experience.

£Note: This feature is only supported on designated SKUs (see Section 21.1.2).

21.1 Overview

21.1.1 Driver/OROM updates for supporting Hybrid Hints Accelerated systems:

- Updating a **production version** of the driver to a newer **production version** of the driver requires a **production version** of the 12.5 or later OROM (***Note: the system will be limited to the features available to the OROM that is installed on the system***)
- Updating the OROM to a newer version requires that the driver version be updated to a driver version from the same release package of the OROM or newer.

Table 21-1: Example of driver/OROM compatibility

	OROM Version			
Driver Version	12.0.0 PV	12.5.0 PV	13.0.0PV	13.1.0PV
12.0.0 PV	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**
12.5.0 PV	**X**	**O**	**X**	**X**
13.0.0 PV	**X**	S	O	**X**
13.1.0PV	**X**	S	S	O

- X = this configuration is not supported
- O = this configuration is supported and is optimal for the driver and OROM

- S = this configuration is supported; however, it is limited to the features of the driver that was originally released with that OROM version. E.g. if the 11.0.0 PV driver is installed/updated to a system running the 10.5.0 PV, the system will be limited to the features of the 10.5.0 OROM. Any new features associated with the 11.0.0 PV release will not be enabled with this configuration.

21.1.2 Requirements and Limitations

Architectural Limitations:

5MB unallocated disk space required at the max LBA of the disk*

***see "Requirements and Limitations" under Dual Drive Configuration for details.System Requirements:**

Intel® Smart Response Technology Hybrid Accelerator is enabled when all of the following conditions are met:

- The system has one of the following Intel® Processors installed:

  - Intel® Core™ Branded (i3, i5, and i7 processor families)
  - Intel® Xeon® Processor Family

- The system is one of the following SKUs:
  - Intel® 9 Series Chipset SATA RAID/AHCI Controller:
    - Broadwell LP U/Y: Premium
    - Desktop: Z97, H97
    - Mobile: HM97
  - Intel® 8 Series Chipset SATA RAID Controller:
    - Mobile: QM87, HM86, HM87
    - Desktop: Q87, Z87, H87
    - WS/Server: C226
    - Lynx Point LP: "Mainstream" and "Premium I/O"
- Operating system:
  - The system is running on one of the supported Operating Systems for this release.

SSHD Requirements:

Beginning with the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology 13.0 driver release version, for the SSHD to meet the Intel® Smart Response Technology "Cache SSD" criteria, it must have the following:

- 8 GB (1GB = 1000MB) minimum non-volatile cache capacity.**

- 1TB maximum non-volatile cache capacity.
- SSHD needs to report Hybrid Hinting support capability (via ATA Identify command return data Word 78 bit 9 =1)

***Spin-down suppression associated with the PUIS feature is not validated on NV cache sizes of 8GB or less.*

Feature Limitations of Intel® Smart Response Technology Hybrid Acceleration:

- On systems in RAID mode, support for this feature is limited to pass-thru disks (not members of an array).
- Intel® RST configuration utilities do not support reporting the enablement of this feature. The Intel® RST UI will support reporting if feature is enabled.

21.2 Dynamic Cache Sharing Between SRT and Rapid Start

Note: Starting with RST13.2 release, Dynamic cache sharing with Rapid Start Technology will not be supported for Broadwell Mobile Platforms.

When implementing both Intel® Rapid Start and Intel® Smart Response Technology with RST13.0 release or later, the Rapid Start partition is dynamically created. The size of the partition dynamically created is dependent on the size of the cache portion of the SSHD and the DRAM on the system:

- For SSHD NV Cache Size of < 18.6GB, The RST driver will dynamically reserve space for the Rapid Start Feature in the Cache Volume equivalent to the size of the DRAM on the system up to 4GB.**

- For SSHD NV Cache Size of > 18.6GB, The RST driver will dynamically reserve space for the Rapid Start Feature in the Cache Volume equivalent to the size of the DRAM on the system up to 8GB.

The assumption is that the OEM/user has properly met all the requirements for Intel® Rapid Start Technology. ***There are NO instructions in this document for configuring the platform for Intel® Rapid Start Technology***. For detailed configuration and setup requirements for Intel® Rapid Start Technology please contact your Intel representative for assistance.

21.3 Build a New System with Hybrid Drive Acceleration Enabled

Note: There is no ability to enable Acceleration. As long as the system meets the criteria for SSHD support, Hybrid Drive acceleration is enabled automatically.

21.3.1 Prepare New Computer

The following instructions are for preparing a brand new computer system to be built with Hybrid Drive Acceleration enabled.

21.3.1.1 Meet System Requirements

For Acceleration requirements, see section Requirements and Limitations. Ensure that the targeted system meets all the requirements for Acceleration.

21.3.1.2 Install SSHD(s)

1. Select an SSHD that has a minimum NV cache capacity of between 4GB and 1TB.
2. Locate SATA port(s) and attach SSHD(s). (**Note** the port number of the pass-through SSHD to be used for the OS system disk.)
3. Install any other HW peripheral desired for the system configuration (e.g. ODD)

21.3.1.3 Installing the OS to a New System Prepared for Disk/Volume Acceleration

To install the OS to a disk/volume previously configured for Acceleration, the RST driver installation files will be required. Download the **f6** zipped archive file (from the RST 12.5 Release or later kit) and extract the files to a media that can be accessed during OS installation (e.g. USB thumb drive).

21.3.1.4 OS Installation

1. Boot to the Windows OS installation media (ensure that the media with the RST driver, e.g. USB thumb drive, is not installed in the system during boot)

2. When prompted to load driver, insert the RST driver installation media and click the Load Driver link.

3. Load the RST driver for your computer system

4. The disk with Hybrid Drive Acceleration enabled, should now be available in the list of storage drives.

5. Select the Hybrid Accelerated enabled disk and continue with the normal OS installation procedure from this point.

Once the installation is complete nothing else is required to enable Acceleration. Acceleration should be enabled on the disk.

21.4 OEM System Manufacturing and Cache Pre-load for Intel® Smart Response Technology

The cache pre-load feature was developed to help OEMs mass produce systems configured with Intel® Smart Response Technology enabled with a cache that is out-of-the-box in a near optimal performance state.

The Intel® Smart Response Technology caching solution is a learning solution. This means that when the cache is initially enabled, there is little to no data being cached. This initially results in many cache misses causing the host to have to access the spindle portion of the SSHD for I/O requests. However, over time, the caching policies of Intel® SRT place data in the cache that is accessed often. So after some time the cache will be loaded with often used data giving the system its optimal or maximum performance configuration.

The problem with this is that when a new system is first used by an end user, the system will have no data cached and thus the performance gains expected of the cache will be small. Depending on use, it could take days of use before the end user starts seeing the expected performance as the cache learns what data should be stored in the cache.

To overcome this initial poor performance gain is to ship the system in the box with the cache already loaded with user data. This could be accomplished in one of two ways. The OEM could configure the system then spend weeks using the system so that it learns what data to load into the cache, or the OEM could preload data into the cache that is likely to be used immediately by the end user.

The following sections dictate the process that the Intel® SRT solution uses to pre-load the cache to be shipped in the box ready for an optimal OOBE performance-wise. It will detail the steps for setting up a system with a Hybrid Accelerated pass-through disk with a pre-loaded cache.

21.4.1 Requirements

1. Must meet all Intel® Smart Response Technology requirements for Hybrid Drive Acceleration.

2. Intel® RST 12.5 production release or later (If in RAID mode, this requires the 12.5 or newer OROM)

3. The RSTCLI Pre-warming tool and scripts located in the SW kit on VIP

    - rstcli64.exe

    - SshdScripts.zip

21.4.2 Process

The SSHD cache loading process is a two stage process:

1. Registry and RST driver set-up, reboot.

2. NV cache content loading, cleanup, and shutdown.

21.4.3 Setup System for Cache Loading

The following steps are assuming the use of the cache loading scripts provided with the Intel® RST SW kit.

1. Install the OS and desired applications that will be shipped on this system
2. If Intel® Rapid Start Technology is to be used, install and configure it now*
3. Download SshdScripts archive (.zip) and RAID configuration utility (RSTCLI.exe) from Intel VIP site (use same kit as the Intel® RST driver and OROM/UEFI driver that will be shipping on the systems)
4. If not already existing, create the C:\Intel directory on the system disk
    a. Copy the SshdScripts.zip file to this directory.
5. Unzip the archive (open it and select to extract it to the default directory which should be C:\Intel\SshdScripts\). The following files should be extracted into the directory:
    - cache_cleanup.reg
    - cache_insert.reg
    - Readme.txt
    - step1_RegistrySetup.bat
    - step2_LoadSshdCache.bat

    a. Copy RSTCLI.exe into the directory
6. Open a command prompt window (needs to be run as administrator in Windows 8) and change directories to C:\Intel\SshdScripts\
7. Run the script **step1_registrysetup.bat** (this will change the caching policy for cache loading then reboot the system for the new policy to take effect)
    Note: this script needs to be edited or replaced to fit your specific requirements and system configuration
8. Once the system reboots, it is ready for loading of the cache

    *Rapid Start/Dynamic Cache Sharing feature support removed for Broadwell Mobile Platforms and newer

21.4.3.1 Cache Loading and Cleanup

3. Run the script **step2_LoadSshdCache.bat,** this will:
    a. Copy selected files to the cache.
    b. Cleanup the registry.
    c. Cleanup the cache loading directory and reboot the system.

4. The system now is ready to be shipped with the cache loaded for optimal performance out of the box

21.4.3.2 Scripting Examples for RSTCLI/RSTCLI64

These are just example scripts provided by Intel® RST. The scripts should be edited to meet specific OEM manufacturing requirements.

The following scripts assume the following system conditions:

5. The OEM has already configured the system in Enhanced Acceleration mode
6. The system SSHD is located on a SATA port
7. The CLI tool, the scripts, and registry editor files are located in directory C:\Intel\SshdScripts\

step1_RegistrySetup.bat

```
REM ************************************************
REM *                    PART 1:                   *
REM ************************************************
REM Edit the registry to set the system  up for Nv Cache content
REM insertion and Startup Menu. This step in the script will
REM automatically call the cache_insert.reg file to update the registry.
REM ************************************************
    regedit /s C:\Intel\SshdScripts\cache_insert.reg

REM ************************************************
REM *                    PART 2:                   *
REM ************************************************
REM ************************************************
REM ************************************************
REM This step will reboot the system for the cache insert policy
REM change to take effect and will automatically start the cache
REM loading script to begin copying data to the cache.
REM ************************************************
    shutdown -f -r -c "Rebooting for SSHD Cache loading"

EOF
```

cache_insert.reg

```
Windows Registry Editor Version 5.00

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStorA\Parameters\Device]
"NvCachePolicy"=dword:0

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Run]
"Rstcli"="C:\\Intel\\SshdScripts\\step2_LoadSshdCache.bat"
```

step2_LoadSshdCache.bat

```
REM ************************************************
REM This section is used for content that needs to
REM have the longest eviction path as possible.
```

```
REM This will put the content into the BOOT LRU.
REM
REM Begin loading AOAC content into cache.
REM Make sure the drive selected is Accelerated i.e.
REM "C:\".
REM ************************************************
C:\Intel\SshdScripts\rstcli.exe --accelerate --loadCache
C:\windows\system32\winevt\logs\*.evtx

REM ************************************************
REM To make sure the content in the BOOT LRU doesn't
REM get evicted, a time delay can be used.
REM This is only needed if the user content is >1.7GB
REM and can be loaded in less than 60s.
REM The time can be "fine-tuned" to adjust for a
REM particular system.  Below is the max to ensure
REM BOOT LRU content doesn't get evicted.
REM ************************************************
    timeout 60
REM ************************************************
REM Finish loading content into cache.
REM Make sure the drive selected is Accelerated i.e.
REM ************************************************
    C:\Intel\SshdScripts\rstcli.exe --accelerate --loadCache "C:\Program Files" --
    recurse

    C:\Intel\SshdScripts\rstcli.exe --accelerate --loadCache "C:\Program Files (x86)" -
    -recurse

    C:\Intel\SshdScripts\rstcli.exe --accelerate --loadCache C:\ProgramData --recurse

    C:\Intel\SshdScripts\rstcli.exe --accelerate --loadCache C:\Windows --recurse

REM ************************************************
REM Clean up the registry and shutdown
REM ************************************************
    regedit C:\Intel\SshdScripts\cache_cleanup.reg

    shutdown -f -r -c "SSHD Cache loading complete"
EOF
```

Note: 'C:\ProgramData' directory is a hidden directory

cache_cleanup.reg

```
Windows Registry Editor Version 5.00
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStorA\Parameters\De
vice]
"NvCachePolicy"=-

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Run]
"Rstcli"=-

EOF
```

Note: These are just examples that demonstrate the *process. They can* be edited by each OEM for their specific requirement or can be used as a guideline to create OEM-specific scripts.

22 ATA Power-Up in Standby (PUIS) Supporting Intel® Smart Connect Technology‡

This feature is supported in RAID mode for SRT Dual Drive configurations, and both RAID and AHCI mode for SSHDs when Hybrid Drive Acceleration is enabled.

The Intel® Smart Connect Technology‡ Version 4.1.2308 or later feature must be enabled (for information on installation, configuration, and usage of this feature, please refer to its documentation CDI/IBP document # 482930 or contact your Intel® Smart Connect Technology representative).

ATA PUIS for SRT Dual Drive requires:

- that the SATA controller be set to RAID mode via the system BIOS (there is no support in AHCI mode)
- that the OS be installed to a PUIS compatible HDD
- that Intel® Smart Response Technology be enabled and in Maximized mode

ATA PUIS for SSHD feature requires:

- that the OS be installed to a PUIS compatible SSHD
- that the SSHD must be installed on a platform that supports Intel® Smart Response Technology for Hybrid Drive Acceleration.

The Intel® Smart Connect Technology (Intel® SCT) is a feature of the platform in which the software on the platform and combination of NIC (LAN/WLAN/WWAN) features provides content updates during periods when the user is away from the PC and the PC is in a power saving mode. In addition, if the system has the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology driver installed with the Intel® Smart Response Technology caching feature enabled in Maximized mode and the pass-through HDD supports the PUIS feature of the ATA specification, then there is an additional power savings benefit during the periods of content update. The PUIS feature allows the HDD to stay in a powered-down state (the drive does not spin-up) during the periods of content update.

*‡**The Intel® Smart Connect Technology** feature is not a part of the Intel® RST SW suite. Contact your Intel field representative for more details regarding this feature.*

£Note: This feature is only supported on the designated RAID-enabled SKUs of the chipsets for SRT Dual Drive.

22.1.1 Overview

22.1.1.1 System Requirements

For a system to support ATA Power-Up in Standby (PUIS) for HDDs and SSHDs with Intel® Smart Connect Technology it must:

- Include one of the RAID enabled SKUs for Dual Drive SRT configurations

  OR
- Include one of the SKUs for SRT Hybrid Drive Acceleration on SSHDs.
- Meet the Intel® Smart Connect Technology system requirements (refer to CDI/IBP document # 482930 for all requirements)
- For Dual Drive Configurations
  - Have the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology driver and OROM installed.
  - 11.0 or newer production versions of each.
- For SSHD Configurations
  - 12.5 or newer
  - NV Cache Capacity of >=8GB and <=1TB.
- Meet the Intel® Smart Response Technology system requirements

22.1.1.2 Feature Limitations of ATA Power-Up in Standby (PUIS) for HDDs with Intel® Smart Connect Technology

- OS must be installed to a bootable HDD or SSHD (the targeted PUIS volume) (**Systems configured with only SSDs are not supported**)
- Intel® Smart Response Technology Dual Drive Configurations must be enabled in **Maximized** mode
- Operating system:
  - All supported Operating Systems for this release.

22.1.2 Theory of Operation

22.1.2.1 External Dependencies Required for Activation

This feature enhancement to the Intel® RST driver has two main external dependencies:

1. The presence of the Intel® Smart Connect Technology Agent to initiate activation of the feature in the driver (if no Agent present, the feature remains inactive)
2. OS installed on a PUIS compatible* HDD or SSHD (once the Agent communicates with the driver to activate the feature, the RST driver checks for the presence of required HW configuration before activating the feature)

Note: Only HDDs that DO NOT require a jumper to emulate the feature are supported.

22.1.2.2 Activation Process

Step 1: Communication is established between Intel® Smart Connect Technology Agent and the Intel® RST driver where the Agent informs the driver to enable PUIS support for HDDs during Agent triggered power state changes

Step 2: Intel® RST driver checks for the following and if all are present, enables PUIS support per the Agent's request:

- OS system disk (boot volume) is a single pass-through hard disk drive (HDD or SSHD) AND
- The HDD/SSHD supports the ATA PUIS feature (jumpered drives are not supported) AND
- The Dual drive configuration system disk is Accelerated in Maximized mode AND
- The HDD/SSHD is Writeable

If all of these are true, then the feature enhancement is active in the Intel® RST driver.

22.1.2.3 PUIS Feature Enable Override

Registry key A Windows registry key is provided to disable the PUIS feature

When the key is present and set to '1', the RST driver does the following:

- Disable the PUIS feature on all enumerated HDDs that support the PUIS feature
- Enumerate all HDDs as non-PUIS HDDs
- Return an 'Invalid' status to the Intel® SCT Agent
- Thereafter have no special handling related to the PUIS feature

Sub Key	Value	Type	Default	Description
N/A	DisablePuis	dword	**0**	This key will determine whether or not the PUIS feature is actively disabled on the system. The feature will be enabled if there no key or the key is set to a value of '0'. Default value will be enabled (**0**).

[KEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStor\Parameters\]

"DisablePuis"=dword(0, 1)

22.1.2.4 SSHD+Smart Connect Agent AOACTime out value

Registry key

A Windows registry key is provided to get around issues where the driver may be busy when the smart connect agent request the timer to be extended, which might result in a disk spin-up. To work around this scenario and get the Smart Connect functionality when using a SSHD, 60 sec is recommended instead of the default value as in the table.

Sub Key	Value	Type	Default	Description
N/A	*AoacTimeout*	dword	**0XA;**	**Change to 0x3C(h) for SSHD**

[KEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStor\Parameters\Device]

"*AoacTimeout*"=dword(0x3c(h)(or) 0xA(d))

22.1.2.5 Performance

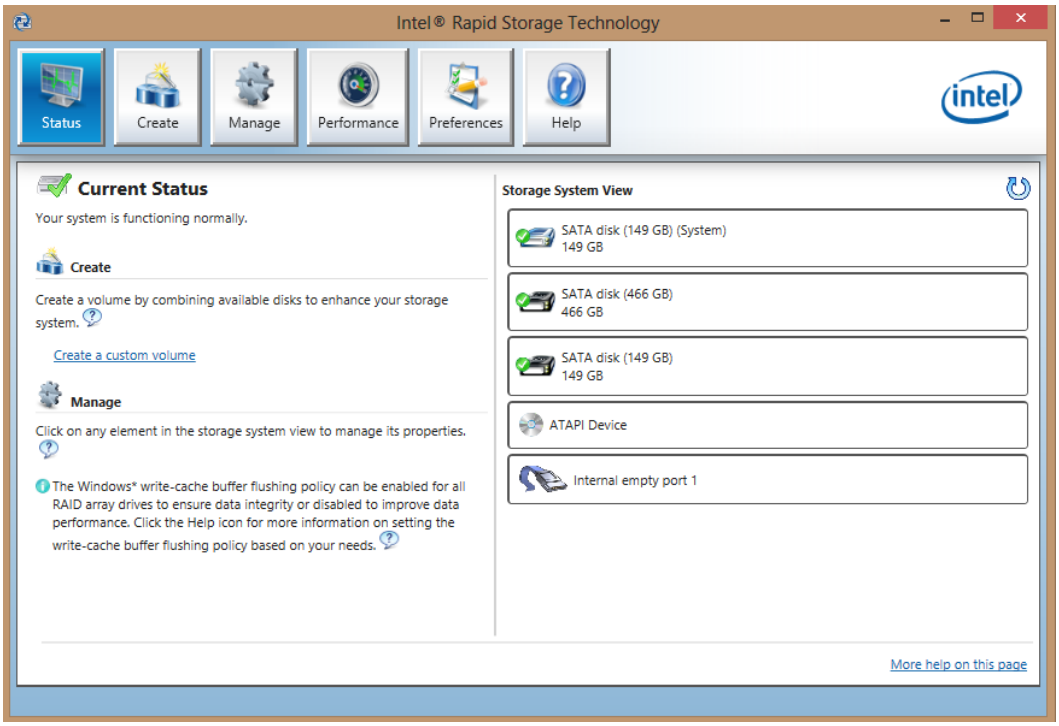
HDD Spin-up Frequency

During the period when the Intel® Smart Connect Technology Agent cycles the system to the S0-ISCT power state to synch the application data, the Intel® RST driver is expected to keep the PUIS HDD in the ATA Power Standby Mode approximately 90% of the synch cycles.

[£]Note: This feature is only supported on the designated RAID-enabled SKUs of the chipsets for SRT Dual Drive.

23 Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UI

NOTE: ***The Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UI is not required to be installed when the storage subsystem is operating in AHCI mode. The main benefit of the Intel® RST UI is in its management and monitoring of the Intel® RST RAID storage subsystem.***



23.1 Introduction

The Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UI is a Windows*-based application that provides users monitoring and management capabilities for the Intel® RST storage subsystem. It offers a wide range of monitoring and management activities for the Intel® RST RAID subsystem (***In AHCI mode there are no management or monitoring capabilities offered by the UI application***).

23.1.1 Getting Started

The Intel® Rapid Storage Technology software package provides high-performance SATA AHCI and SATA RAID capabilities for supported operating systems.

The Intel® Rapid Storage Technology(RST) UI requires the Microsoft .NET 4.5 framework beginning with Intel® RST 13.0 release. For prior releases, the RST UI connects and interoperates with the Microsoft .NET 3.0, 3.5, and 4.0 framework.

Refer to the System Requirements and the online user's manual to set up your system's configuration and feature support level. You can also review the Readme file installed with this software or visit Intel's online support to learn more about the full system requirements and RAID BIOS configuration.

RAID enabled systems

Redundant Array of Independent Disks (RAID) refers to multiple independent disks combined to form one logical drive. The main objective of this technology is to improve storage system performance, data protection, and increase fault-tolerance.

This technology provides support for the following features:

- **Intel® Rapid Recover Technology**
  This technology provides full data redundancy by copying data from a designated source drive (i.e., master disk) to a designated destination drive (i.e., recovery disk). Data updates of recovery volumes can be continuous or on request.
- **Intel® Rapid Storage Technology RAID**
  This technology provides the ability to create RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5, and RAID 10 volumes on desktop and mobile platforms. Data is distributed across two or more disks to provide data redundancy (exception of RAID0) or to enhance data storage performance.
- **Intel® Matrix RAID Technology**
  This technology allows two independent RAID volumes to be created on a single array. The first volume occupies part of the array, leaving space for the second volume. The array may consist of two to six SATA disks depending on the volume types.
- **Hot plug**
  Also referred to as hot swap, this feature allows SATA disks to be removed or inserted while the computer is turned on and the operating system is running. As an example, hot plugging may be used to replace a failed external disk.
- **Intel® Smart Response Technology caching**
  This feature allows you to use a non-system solid state disk and configure it as a non-volatile intelligent cache device in order to accelerate a disk or volume that is part of the storage system. This configuration helps improve the overall system performance.
- **Volume migration**
  This feature provides support for converting system data into a high-performance or protection RAID configuration.
- **Volume size increase**
  This feature allows you to increase the data storage capacity of a volume by using 100% of the available array space or by adding one or more SATA disk to an existing volume.
- **Password-protected disks**

This feature provides high-level security and protection for the data on your disks with a password, denying access from any unauthorized user. Additional features and technology supported by the driver although not directly accessible via the Intel® RST UI:

- **TRIM**

  This feature provides support for all solid state disks (SSDs) in your storage system that meet the ATA-8 protocol requirements and are not part of an array. This feature optimizes write operations, helps devices reduce wear, and maintains unused storage area on devices as large as possible.

  Beginning with the Intel® 7 Series chipset the driver supports TRIM on SSDs in a RAID 0 configuration.

- **ODD power optimization**

  This feature allows an unused optical disk drive (ODD) to be automatically powered off when media such as a compact disk, a DVD, or Blu-ray disk are not present in the drive and the tray** is closed. The ODD is powered back on by the operating system or user interaction with the device, including when the eject button is pressed. ODD power optimization is particularly valuable for mobile computers as battery life is negatively affected when the ODD is powered on and in an idle state. This feature is only supported on the following system configurations: Intel® 6 Series Chipset or later, compatible motherboards, and compatible ODDs. For more information about compatibility requirements, refer to the SATA specifications available at www.sata-io.org

  **For slot-loadable drives, the tray condition does not apply.

- **Native command queuing**

  A feature that allows SATA disks to accept more than one command at a time. When used in conjunction with one or more disks that support NCQ, storage performance is increased on random workloads by allowing the disk to internally optimize the order of commands.

- **Hybrid Hinting**

  This feature supports the use of Solid-State Hybrid Drives (SSHD). SSHD's are hard disks that contain Flash memory for use as a cache to store frequently accessed data. The driver provides hints to the SSHD to notify the drive which data would be best to store in the data cache.

  Disks of more than two terabytes

  This feature provides support for hard disks and solid state disks with a capacity greater than 2 TB that are reported as pass-through devices (available) or used in a RAID configuration. In addition, booting from a system disk greater than 2 TB is allowed as long as the version of the option ROM in your system supports this feature.

  Note: If a source disk is greater than 2TB and using the MBR partitioning scheme, the application will not allow data preservation in order to create a volume. Instead, a new volume will be created with no partition on it. Also, if the operating system is Windows* XP, capacity expansion operations will not be allowed for volume sizes equal or greater than 2TB.

AHCI-enabled systems

Advanced Host Controller Interface (AHCI) is an interface specification that automatically allows the storage driver to enable advanced SATA features, such as Native Command Queuing and Native Hot Plug, on the SATA disks connected to your computer. The following features are supported on AHCI-enabled systems:

- **Native command queuing**
- **Hot plug**
- **Disks of more than two terabytes (if that size is supported by the RST UEFI pre-OS driver or legacy OptionROM)**
- **Password-protected disks**
- **ODD power optimization (Microsoft Windows Vista* and higher)**
- **Dynamic Storage Acceleration**
- **Hybrid Hinting**

23.1.2 Understanding the Application

The Intel® Rapid Storage Technology application allows you to optimize and maintain a healthy storage system by creating volumes, customizing performance settings and managing storage system elements. This section provides you with a general overview of a storage system configuration and an individual review of all the areas contained in this application.

23.1.2.1 Storage System Configuration

The storage system combines hardware capabilities with RAID technology to provide flexible data storage units on your computer. Each data storage unit, or RAID configuration, consists of three elements that include physical SATA disks, one or two volumes, and one array. When at least one volume is present on the system, these elements are represented in the storage system view of the Status and Manage areas.

In this section, we describe each of these RAID configuration elements and explain how they relate to each other.

- **Array**
  An array is a collection of two or more SATA disks in a RAID configuration and is the highest element in the hierarchy of a storage system. Once a volume is created, the disks you used to create that volume form an array. Refer to the Creating Additional Volumes topic for details on how you can create two volumes across the same disks. An array can include one or two RAID volumes if the hardware allows it.
- **Volume**
  A volume is the storage area on two or more disks whose type dictates the configuration of the data stored. If you created a volume for data protection, then your storage system may include a RAID 1 volume spanning two SATA disks, which mirrors data on each disk.
- **Disks**
  A disk (i.e., hard disk or hard disk drive) physically stores data and allows read/write data access. If a disk is used to create a volume, it becomes an array disk because it has been grouped with other disks to form an array.

The storage system can also include ATAPI devices, which cannot be used to create a volume. They are a mass storage device with a parallel interface, such as CD-ROM, DVD/Blu-ray disc, or tape drive.

23.1.2.2 Navigation

The application is organized into five main areas depicted by the top navigation buttons: Status, Create, Manage, Accelerate, and Preferences. Depending on your computer's configuration and available hardware, Create and Accelerate may not be available.

Status

The 'Status' area provides a general state of health of your storage system. If a status other than normal is reported, the Manage sub-section will be available to provide you with basic information and actions links necessary to return the status to normal.

Create

The 'Create' area allows you to create different types of volumes to protect data, enhance disk performance, optimize disk capacity, or create a custom volume to combine benefits.

Note

The ‘Create’ area is only available if your computer supports RAID technology, and if the volume requirements are met. Refer to the Volume Requirements topic for an exhaustive list of storage system conditions to create a volume.

Manage

The 'Manage' area combines the logical and physical view of your storage system. The area displays detailed information about each element that is part of the storage system, such as volumes and disks; the storage system view shows how the selected element relates to others. Each element has its own 'Manage' area which is accessible by clicking any element displayed in the storage system view under 'Status' or 'Manage'.

The 'Manage' area also provides the actions available for the selected element, such as renaming a volume or changing the volume type.

Accelerate

The ‘Accelerate’ area allows you to manage the cache memory configuration using a non-system solid state disk as a cache device. If the cache is reported in an abnormal state, detailed information and troubleshooting actions will display. The Acceleration View is specific to the ‘Accelerate’ area and only displays in this location.

Preferences

The 'Preferences' area allows you to customize system settings by enabling the display of the notification area icon, and by selecting the type of notifications that you want the application to display.

Storage System View

The storage system view has two functions:

- It is a simplified representation of your storage system and displays graphic elements, such as arrays, volumes, devices, and ports. Each element provides general attribute information, such as status, name and size. Hovering over each element provides additional attribute details.
- You can also use the graphical view to access 'Manage' by clicking the storage system element you want to work with. For example, if an array is present, clicking the volume opens Manage Volume and clicking one of the array disks will open Manage Disk for the selected disk.

Acceleration View

The Acceleration View is a graphical representation of the acceleration configuration, and only displays the devices (disks and volumes) included in this particular configuration. You can use this view to access the 'Manage' page specific to each represented device by clicking the storage system element for which you want more detailed information.

23.1.3 Notification Area

The notification area (also called the system tray) is located on your desktop. The taskbar contains the notification area icon for Intel® Rapid Storage Technology. The icon provides storage system status and notifications such as volume and disk events based on a change of state.

The notification area icon will automatically display in the notification area once Intel Rapid Storage Technology is installed. Both administrators and standard users can change the notification area settings using the application or directly from the notification area. Settings changes are applied on a per user basis, and do not affect other users' settings.

Opening the application from the notification area

1. Right-click the icon.
2. Click 'Open Application'.

The notification area icon can be in the following states:

Icon	Description
	The storage system is reported in a **normal** state and your data is protected from a disk failure.
	The storage system is reported in a **warning** state and data may be at risk. We recommend that you open the application to review and resolve the reported issues.
	The storage system is reported in an **error** state and data may be lost. We recommend that you open the application to review and resolve the reported issues as soon as possible.
	The storage system is reported in a **busy** state while an operation is in progress. Once the operation is complete, all actions will be available again, allowing you to manage the storage system as long as it is reported in a normal state. You can follow the progress of the operation by hovering over the icon.

	This icon is displayed while you are attempting to open the application, but the Intel® Rapid Storage Technology service has not started running yet. The service is expected to start automatically with a delay when you launch Windows. This icon appears if you attempt to launch the application before the delay period ends. If the application fails to open, try starting the service manually using Microsoft Windows* Services.

Selecting system notifications

1. Right-click the icon.
2. Select the types of notifications you want to receive. The notification area menu allows you to select or deselect one option at a time. Repeat this procedure until you are finished with your selection. The same operation can also be completed using the application, from the 'Preferences' area.

Note
To hide the notification area icon, deselect 'Show the notification area icon' under 'System Preferences'.

Reviewing notifications

- Hover over the icon at any time to view the storage system status or the progression of an operation.
- Small pop-up windows will display for a short time to notify you of specific events, such as a missing disk or the completion of an operation.
- Open the application to view more details about storage system events in the 'Status' or 'Manage' areas.

23.2 Storage System Status

Anytime Intel® Rapid Storage Technology is launched, the application opens to the 'Status' area. This is where the general state of health of your storage system is reported, both in the storage system view and in details. Depending on the status, volume creation and management options may be available in order to enhance or repair your storage system.

23.2.1 Understanding the Status

To get the full benefits of what Intel® Rapid Storage Technology has to offer, it is critical to maintain a healthy storage system. The application helps you track and reports any disk or volume related problems that could put the safekeeping of your data at risk.

The storage system can be in the following states:

Normal
Reports that the system is functioning as expected, SATA disks are present and connected to the computer. If an array is present, volume data is fully accessible.

The Create subsection is only available if the storage system meets the minimum requirements to create a volume. Depending on the available hardware, you may be given the option to create a volume to protect data, optimize the disk performance, or create a custom volume.

The Manage subsection is only available if the storage system reports atypical conditions in a normal

state. Typically, details or a recommended action are provided to help you rectify any storage system conditions. For example, if a recovery volume was reported as read-only, we would inform you that disk files must be hidden prior to requesting updates.

The Accelerate subsection is only available if a solid state disk can be used as a cache device and an eligible disk or volume can be accelerated. This area typically provides the option to enable acceleration and reports the cache and accelerated device health state, as well as the current acceleration mode.

Warning

Reports that storage system data may be at risk due to a problem detected on one or more SATA disks.

The Manage subsection displays any SATA disk or volume states reported by the storage system that may require your attention in order to keep data fully protected and accessible. Details or a recommended action are provided to help you fix any storage system problems. For example, if the master disk in a recovery volume is reported as failed, we would recommend that you rebuild the volume to another disk.

Note

In this state, we recommend that you backup any accessible data before taking action

In this state, the Accelerate subsection typically reports that the cache volume is failing possibly because the solid state disk is reported at risk of failing (smart event). Details and a recommended action are provided to help you fix the problem reported on the solid state disk.

Error

Reports that storage system data may be lost due to a problem detected on one or more SATA disks.

The Manage subsection displays any SATA disk or volume states reported by the storage system that require your immediate attention in order to keep data fully protected and accessible. Details or a recommended action are provided to help you fix any storage system problems. For example, if the data on a RAID 1 volume appears inaccessible due to a failed array disk, we would recommend that you rebuild the volume to another disk.

Note

In this state, we recommend that you backup any accessible data before taking action

In this state, the Accelerate subsection typically reports that the cache volume has failed possibly because the solid state disk has also failed and there is data loss. Details and a recommended action are provided to help you fix the problem reported on the solid state disk.

23.2.2 Storage System View

The storage system view provides a visual representation of your storage system and displays arrays, volumes, devices, and ports. Volumes and SATA disks graphics reflect their current states, which allows you to quickly identify the element that is causing the storage system to be in a state other than normal.

Note:

Hovering over a designated element in the storage system view provides a snapshot of its properties. Clicking allows you to access and manage its properties.

Overview of SATA disks states

State	Description	Recommendation
	An internal hard disk is reported normal.	None

	An external hard disk is reported normal.	None
	An internal solid state disk is reported as normal.	None
	An external solid state disk is reported as normal.	None
	An internal solid-state hybrid disk reported as normal.	None
	An internal disk is reported missing.	Ensure that the disk is securely connected to the SATA port and that the SATA cable is functioning properly. Refer to the Troubleshooting section for more information.
	An internal disk is reported at risk or Incompatible.	Back up your data and replace the disks as soon as possible. Refer to the Troubleshooting section for more information.
	An external hard disk is reported at risk or incompatible.	Back up your data and refer to the Troubleshooting section for more information.
	An internal solid state disk is reported as being at risk or incompatible.	Back up your data and refer to the Troubleshooting section for more information.
	An external solid state disk is reported at risk or incompatible.	Back up your data and refer to the Troubleshooting section for more information.
	An internal disk is reported offline.	Unlock all array disks to unlock the volume. Refer to the Troubleshooting section for more information.
	An internal recovery disk is reported offline.	• The recovery volume is in on request update mode. Change the volume update mode to continuous, if desired. Or, • Your computer is running on battery and data updates to the recovery disk are not available. Reconnect your computer to the power supply.
	An external disk is reported offline.	Unlock all array disks to unlock the volume. Refer to the Troubleshooting section for more information.
	An external recovery disk is reported offline.	• The recovery volume is in on request update mode. Change the volume update mode to continuous, if desired. Or, • Your computer is running on battery and data updates to the recovery disk are not available. Reconnect your computer to the power supply.
	An internal disk is reported normal and locked.	Unlock the disk to access more options.
	An external disk is reported normal and locked.	Unlock the disk to access more options.
	An internal hard disk is reported failed.	Refer to the Troubleshooting section for more information.
	An external hard disk is reported failed.	Refer to the Troubleshooting section for more information.

	An internal solid state disk is reported as failed.	Refer to the Troubleshooting section for more information.
	An external solid state disk is reported as failed.	Refer to the Troubleshooting section for more information.

Volume states

Volume type	Normal	Degraded	Failed
		Refer to Troubleshooting Degraded Volumes and Caching Issues for more information.	Refer to Troubleshooting Failed Volumes and Caching Issues for more information.
RAID 0		Not applicable	
Single-disk (cache)			
Single-disk (data)		Not applicable	
RAID 1/Recovery			
RAID 5			
RAID 10			

Other storage system elements

Element	Description	Recommendation
	A port that has no devices connected to it.	None
	An ATAPI device is present, such as CD-ROM, DVD/Blu-ray disc, or tape drive.	None

23.3 Creating a Volume

You can combine SATA disks to create a volume in order to enhance your storage system. Based on the available hardware and your computer's configuration, you may be able to create a volume by selecting an enhancement goal, such as 'Protect data' under 'Status', or by selecting a volume type under 'Create'. We recommend you get familiar with the minimum requirements in this section before starting the volume creation process.

Warning
Performing this action will permanently delete any existing data on the disks used to create a volume, unless you choose to keep the data when selecting array disks. Backup all valuable data before starting this process.

23.3.1 Volume Requirements

Creating a volume is only available as an option if the following requirements are met:

- You are logged on as an administrator.

- The computer is RAID ready (refer to the user's manual available on Intel's online support web site, for assistance on setting up a RAID ready system).
- Two or more SATA disks, including the operating system disk are connected, in a normal state, and unlocked (only applies to password-protected disks).
- Each of the SATA disks that are to be part of the RAID volume may not have any SMART events.

Enabling more disks

When configuring a volume, the application will only list the SATA disks that meet the requirements listed below. For example, a locked disk connected to your computer will not be listed as an option until it is unlocked.

Based on the first disk selected, some disks may become grayed out if one or more requirements are not met. Selecting a different disk generally helps re-enable disks that were previously grayed out.

- If the first selection is a system disk, any additional SATA disks selected must be of equal or greater size to ensure that all the system files are migrated to the new volume.
- If the first selection is a non-system disk, and a system disk is then selected, the latter must be of equal or smaller size to ensure that all the system files are migrated to the new volume.
- A system volume cannot be greater than 2 TB. If your first selection is a system disk, the total size of the other disks shall not allow the volume size to exceed 2 TB. Exception: If you are creating a volume using disks that have no existing data, and your operating system is a 64-bit Edition, the application will allow a volume to be greater than 2TB.
- The SATA disks used to create a volume must have the same type of connection, internal or external. An internal disk shall not be paired with an external disk to create a volume. Some systems will support mixed connection types.

Enabling more volume types

Depending on the input/output (I/O) controller hub that your computer is using and the hardware connected to the system, some volume types may not be enabled in the selection list. Refer to the Readme file located in the Program Files directory for this application or to the Device Manager to determine which controller is installed on your computer. Review the controller support table below to determine which volume types you can create.

Note

Intel® 5 Series Chipset applies to both desktop and mobile platforms as well as all later chipsets.

Volume type	Number of disks	Controller support
Recovery volume	2	ICH9R, ICH9DH, ICH9DO, ICH9M, ICH9M-E, ICH10R, ICH10D, ICH10DO, 5 Series/3400 Series. **Note** No other volumes can be present on the system. The master disk must include 100% of the available disk space and must be less than 1.3125 TB
RAID 0	2	ICH7R, ICH7DH, ICH7MDH, ICH7M, ICH9R, ICH9DH, ICH9DO, ICH9M, ICH9M-E, ICH10R, ICH10D, ICH10DO, 5 Series/3400 Series.

RAID 0	3 or 4	ICH7R, ICH7DH, ICH9R, ICH9DH, ICH9DO, ICH10R, ICH10D, ICH10DO, 5 Series/3400 Series .
RAID 0	5 or 6	ICH9R, ICH9DH, ICH9DO, ICH10R, ICH10D, ICH10DO, 5 Series/3400 Series.
RAID 1	2	ICH7R, ICH7DH, ICH7MDH, ICH7M, ICH9R, ICH9DH, ICH9DO, ICH9M, ICH9M-E, ICH10R, ICH10D, ICH10DO, 5 Series/3400 Series.
RAID 5	3 or 4	ICH7R, ICH7DH, ICH9R, ICH9DH, ICH9DO, ICH10R, ICH10D, ICH10DO, 5 Series/3400 Series.
RAID 5	5 or 6	ICH9R, ICH9DH, ICH9DO, ICH10R, ICH10D, ICH10DO, 5 Series/3400 Series.
RAID 10	4	ICH7R, ICH7DH, ICH9R, ICH9DH, ICH9DO, ICH10R, ICH10D, ICH10DO, 5 Series/3400 Series.

23.3.2 Creation Process

Now that you have reviewed the volume requirements, this section will guide you through the three easy steps necessary to create a volume.

23.3.2.1 Selecting a Volume Type

Before you can create a volume, you need to decide how you want to enhance your storage system based on your needs. Depending on the available hardware, you may have the option to combine volume types by creating more than one volume on a single array. Refer to 'Creating Additional Volumes' for more information on this type of configuration. Below is an overview of the five volume types that you can create.

Creating a two-disk volume from 'Status'
This option displays if only two disks are available, one has data such as system files, the second one doesn't, and the latter has a size that is equal or greater than the other. Based on this simple configuration, you can create a volume to protect data or optimize disk performance by clicking one of the two options listed in the Create subsection. When choosing this option, the application automatically configures the volume using the only two disks available and assigns default settings. Refer to the applicable procedure described in Completing the Process for details.

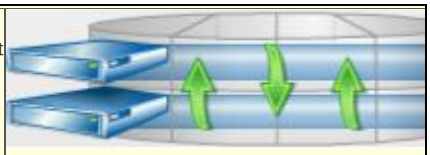
Creating a custom volume

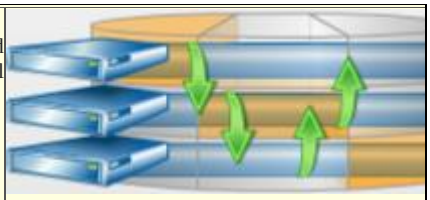
1. Click 'Create' or 'Create a custom volume' under 'Status'.
2. Select the volume type. Selecting a volume type in the list updates the graphical representation to provide a detailed description of that type.
3. Click 'Next'.

Recovery volume: **Flexible data protection** Combines two SATA disks and utilizes RAID 1 functionality to copy data from a designated master disk to a designated recovery disk. Data updates on the volume can be continuous or on request. In 'on request' mode, you can request data updates that copy changes from the master disk to the recovery disk since the last update. No other volumes can be present on the system. The master disk must include 100% of the	

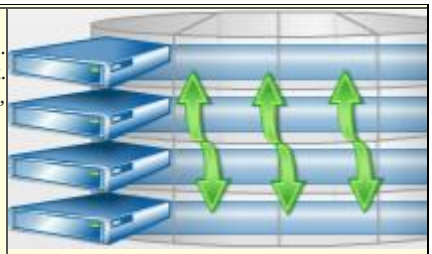
available disk space and must be less than 1.3125 TB.	
Disks required	2
Advantage	Full data redundancy; more control over how data is copied between master and recovery disks; fast volume updates in on request mode; master and recovery disk files can be viewed in Windows Explorer*.
Disadvantage	Storage capacity is only as large as the smallest disk.
Application	Critical data protection for mobile systems; fast restoration of the master disk to a previous or default state. Available in specific mobile configurations.

RAID 1: **Real-time data protection** Combines two SATA disks where each stores an exact copy of the data to appear as a mirror of each other.	
Disks required	2
Advantage	Full data redundancy and excellent fault-tolerance; increased read transfer rate.
Disadvantage	Storage capacity is only as large as the smallest disk; slight decrease in write transfer rate.
Application	Typically used in workstations and servers to store critical data. Available in specific mobile configurations.

RAID 0: **Optimized disk performance** Combines two to six SATA disks and breaks down data into units that are spread across the array disks.	
Disks required	2 to 6
Advantage	Increased data access and storage performance; no loss in data capacity
Disadvantage	No data redundancy (if one disk fails, all data on the volume is lost).
Application	Typically used in desktops and workstations to store high performance, temporary data and software. Various RAID 0 volume configurations available in specific mobile configurations.

RAID 5: **Efficient data hosting and protection** Combines three to six SATA disks where data and parity are striped across the array disks in a rotating sequence. Parity is a mathematical method for recreating lost data to a single disk.	
Disks required	3 to 6
Advantage	Data redundancy; improved storage performance and capacity; high fault-tolerance and read performance.

Disadvantage	Time-consuming to rebuild and decreased performance during the process.
Application	Good choice for large amounts of critical data, such as file and application servers; Internet and Intranet servers. Available in mobile configurations that include the Intel® 5 Series Chipset which supports up to six SATA ports.

RAID 10 : **Balanced performance and data protection** Combines four SATA disks to create a combination of RAID types 1+0. The data is striped across a two-disk array forming a RAID 0 component. Each disk in the RAID 0 array is mirrored by a disk in the RAID 1 array, storing an exact copy of all the data.	
Disks required	4
Advantage	Combines the read performance of RAID 0 with the fault-tolerance of RAID 1, resulting in increased data access and full data redundancy, and increased storage capacity.
Disadvantage	4 disks are required, resulting in increased cost.
Application	High performance applications and high load database servers requiring data protection, such as video editing. Available in mobile configurations that include the Intel® 5 Series Chipset which supports up to six SATA ports.

23.3.2.2 Configuring the Volume

Once the volume type is selected, you are ready to configure your volume.

Recovery volume

1. Type a new volume name if you want to change the default name.
2. Select the master disk.
3. Select the recovery disk.
4. Select a different update mode, if desired.
5. Click 'Next'. This button will not be active until all the required selections have been made.

Advanced configuration settings:

- Enable or disable the volume write-back cache.
- Select the check box to initialize the volume. You can choose to perform this action at a later time.

RAID Volume

1. Type a new volume name if you want to change the default name.
2. Select the required number of disks.
3. Select the disk from which you want to keep data, if desired. You can only keep data from one disk. If you want to keep data from more than one disk, you must back up all valuable data prior to creating a volume.
4. Click 'Next'. This button will not be active until all the required selections have been made.

Advanced configuration settings:

- Select the array allocation by using the slider.
- Select a data strip size.
- Enable or disable the volume write-back cache.
- Select the check box to initialize the volume. You can choose to perform this action at a later time.

Note
Currently, the application does not allow the creation of greater than 2TB volumes where the source disk is greater than 2TB and data on that disk is preserved (e.g. system volume). Target disks can be greater than 2TB but such volumes cannot. This limitation results from the lack of GPT partition scheme support. Note that volumes greater than 2TB that include member disks greater than 2TB are supported as long as array disks are unpartitioned or that no data is preserved at volume creation.

23.3.2.3 Completing the Process

If you are creating a custom volume, and have configured the volume with the disk selection and other settings, you are ready to review the projected configuration and complete the volume creation process.

If you are creating a two-disk volume for data protection or disk optimization from 'Status', you can follow the procedure provided below.

Creating a two-disk volume from 'Status'

1. Under 'Status', in the Create sub-section, select the type of volume you want to create.
2. In the 'Confirm Volume Creation' dialog, review the volume configuration. Note that the volume name is the only setting that can be changed.
3. Click 'Create Volume' to confirm. The process starts immediately.
4. Once completed, a dialog displays to notify you that the volume was successfully created. Click 'OK' to close the dialog.
5. The page refreshes and displays the new volume in the storage system view as well as the data migration progress.

Creating a custom volume

Warning
You can only keep existing data from one of the disks you select to create a volume. We recommend that you backup all valuable data before proceeding.

If you perform a driver upgrade or downgrade while the data migration is in progress and then restart your computer, the driver will not be able to recognize the volume or the data on it. If you are migrating a system volume, you will not be able to restart your system because the operating system cannot load. If you are migrating a data volume, you will have to reverse (roll back) that last performed driver update, and then restart the computer to return to a normal state.

1. Under 'Confirm', review the selected configuration.
2. Click 'Create Volume' if you want to create the volume using the selected configuration. Otherwise, click 'Back' and make any necessary changes. The process starts immediately.

3. Click 'OK' to confirm.
4. Once completed, a dialog displays to notify you that the volume was successfully created. Click 'OK' to close the dialog.
5. The 'Status' area displays the new volume in the storage system view as well as the data migration progress.

If the size of the new volume is larger than the size of the source drive, the following steps apply:

6. Once the migration status reports 100% complete, restart your computer for the operating system to recognize the new volume size.
7. Create a new partition or extend the existing partition to utilize the new volume space using Windows Disk Management*. If your system is running Microsoft XP*, you may only have the option to create a new partition.

Note
To open Windows Disk Manager, click Start, right click My Computer, select Manage, then in the console tree select Disk Management.

23.3.3 Creating Additional Volumes

Creating multiple volumes on a single array

You can add a volume to an existing RAID array by creating another volume that uses the available space on the array. This feature allows you to combine different volume types and their respective benefits. For example, a configuration with RAID 0 and RAID 1 on two SATA disks provides better data protection than a single RAID 0 and higher performance than a single RAID 1.

The first RAID volume occupies part of the array, leaving space for the other volume to be created. After creating the first volume with an array allocation set to less than 100% in the Configure Volume step, you will be able to add a second volume to that array.

Note
The configuration is only available if the array allocation for the first volume created is less than 100%, and space is available on that array. The application currently supports an array to include a maximum of two RAID volumes.

1. Click 'Create' or 'Create a custom volume' under 'Status'.
2. Select the volume type. Selecting a volume type in the list updates the graphical representation to provide a detailed description of that type.
3. Click 'Next'.
4. Select 'Yes' to add the volume to an existing array.
5. Make any necessary changes in the Advanced section.
6. Click 'Next'.
7. Review the selected configuration. Click 'Back' or an option in the left pane if you want to make changes.
8. Click 'Finish' to start the creation process.

Supported RAID volume combinations on a single array:

Combine	With

2-disk RAID 0	2-disk RAID 0 2-disk RAID 1
2-disk RAID 1	2-disk RAID 0 2-disk RAID 1
3-disk RAID 0	3-disk RAID 0 3-disk RAID 5
3-disk RAID 5	3-disk RAID 0 3-disk RAID 5
4-disk RAID 0	4-disk RAID 0 4-disk RAID 5 4-disk RAID 10
4-disk RAID 5	4-disk RAID 0 4-disk RAID 5 4-disk RAID 10
4-disk RAID 10	4-disk RAID 0 4-disk RAID 5 4-disk RAID 10
5-disk RAID 0	5-disk RAID 0 5-disk RAID 5
6-disk RAID 0	6-disk RAID 0 6-disk RAID 5

Visit our Online Support for additional information on RAID type combinations for each I/O controller hub.

Creating additional volumes on a new array

You can choose to create two or more volumes on two different arrays, as long as the volume requirements are met.

1. Click ‘Create’ or 'Create a custom volume' under 'Status'.
2. Select the volume type. Selecting a volume type in the list updates the graphical representation to provide a detailed description of that type.
3. Click ‘Next’.
4. Select 'No' in order to add a volume to a new array.
5. Select the required number of disks.
6. Select the disk from which you want to keep data, if desired. You can only keep data from one disk. If you want to keep data from more than one disk, you must back up all valuable data prior to creating a volume.
7. Make any necessary changes in the Advanced section.
8. Review the selected configuration. Click 'Back' or an option in the left pane if you want to make changes.
9. Click ‘Next’.
10. Click 'Finish' to start the creation process.

Note: Systems with an RST OROM older than 9.5, will not recognize 2 volumes on a single array if the RST Windows Driver version is 9.5 and newer.

23.4 Managing the Storage System

The 'Manage' area combines the logical and physical view of your storage system. The area displays detailed information about each element that is part of the storage system, such as volumes and disks; the storage system view shows how the selected

element relates to others. Each element has its own 'Manage' area which is accessible by clicking any element displayed in the storage system view under 'Status' or 'Manage'.

The 'Manage' area also provides the actions available for the selected element, such as renaming a volume or changing the volume type.

23.4.1 Managing Arrays

You must be logged on as an administrator to perform the actions listed in this section.

You can manage arrays by clicking a selected array in the storage system view under 'Status' or 'Manage'. This allows you to review the properties and access all actions associated with that array, such as adding a disk or increasing a volume size.

23.4.1.1 Array Properties

An array is a logical grouping of physical SATA disks. The array properties listed below display to the left of the storage system view under Manage Array and report values specific to the element selected in the view.

Parameter	Value
Name	Reports the name of the array. The array name is automatically assigned and cannot be changed.
Size	Reports the total capacity of the array in megabytes (MB).
Available space	Reports the unallocated space on the array that can be used.
Disk data cache	Reports whether the data cache is enabled for all array disks.

23.4.1.2 Adding a Disk to an Array

You can add one or more SATA disks to an existing array to increase the system storage capacity. This feature can be useful if you want to change to a volume type that requires additional disks.

This option is only available if:

- A RAID 0 and/or a RAID 5 volume is present,
- One or more SATA disks are connected to the computer and available,
- The available disk matches the internal or external connection type of the existing array disks. You cannot add an external disk to an array that includes internal disks, and vice versa.

Refer to Connecting a Disk under Managing Disks for more information on installing SATA disks on your computer.

Warning

Any existing data on the available disk used to increase the array size will be permanently deleted. Backup all the data you want to preserve prior to executing this action.

If you perform a driver upgrade or downgrade while the data migration is in progress and then restart your computer, the driver will not be able to recognize the volume or the data on it. If you are migrating a system volume, you will not be able to restart

your system because the operating system cannot load. If you are migrating a data volume, you will have to reverse (roll back) that last performed driver update, and then restart the computer to return to a normal state.

This action can also be performed from Manage Volume. Refer to the Adding a Disk to a Volume section for more information.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the array to which you want to add a disk. The element properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Add disk'.
3. Select the disk you want to use to increase the array capacity.
4. Click 'Add Disk'. Caution: Once the data migration starts, the operation cannot be canceled.
5. Once the migration has completed, restart your computer for changes to take effect. Then use Windows Disk Management* to increase the partition size on the volumes for which a disk was added, or add another partition.

Note
To open Windows Disk Manager, click Start, right click My Computer, select Manage, then in the console tree select Disk Management

23.4.1.3 Adding a Volume

You can add a volume to an existing RAID array by combining different volume types and their respective benefits. For example, a configuration with RAID 0 and RAID 1 on two SATA disks provides better data protection than a single RAID 0 and higher performance than a single RAID 1.

The first RAID volume occupies part of the array, leaving space for the other volume to be created. After creating the first volume with an array allocation set to less than 100% in the Configure Volume step, you will be able to add a second volume to that array.

Note
This configuration is only available if the array allocation for the first volume is less than 100%, and space is available on that array. The application currently supports an array to include a maximum of two RAID volumes on a single array.

You can also complete this action using the ‘Create’ area.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the array to which you want to add a volume. The array properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Create additional volume'.
3. In the 'Create Additional Volume' dialog, type a new name if you want to change the default name.
4. Select the volume type, and then click 'OK'. Only the volume types available for the current configuration will display. Refer to the table below for more information.
5. The page refreshes and the array now displays the additional volume.

Supported RAID volume combinations on a single array:

Combine	With
2-disk RAID 0	2-disk RAID 0 2-disk RAID 1
2-disk RAID 1	2-disk RAID 0 2-disk RAID 1
3-disk RAID 0	3-disk RAID 0 3-disk RAID 5
3-disk RAID 5	3-disk RAID 0 3-disk RAID 5
4-disk RAID 0	4-disk RAID 0 4-disk RAID 5 4-disk RAID 10
4-disk RAID 5	4-disk RAID 0 4-disk RAID 5 4-disk RAID 10
4-disk RAID 10	4-disk RAID 0 4-disk RAID 5 4-disk RAID 10
5-disk RAID 0	5-disk RAID 0 5-disk RAID 5
6-disk RAID 0	6-disk RAID 0 6-disk RAID 5

Visit our Online Support for additional information on RAID type combinations for each I/O controller hub.

23.4.1.4 Increasing Volume Size

You can increase the size of a RAID volume by using the remaining available space on the array. A minimum of 32 MB must be available for this action to be available. Hovering over the array name in the storage system view displays the amount of available space in MB.

After creating a volume with an array allocation set to less than 100% in the Configure Volume step, you will be able to increase the volume size by the amount of available space on that array. If two volumes are present on a single array and capacity expansion is possible, only the space available at the end of the second volume will be used to increase the volume size.

This option is only available if:

- A RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5 and/or RAID 10 volume is present,
- The array allocation for the volume is less than 100% and space is available on the existing array.

Warning
If you perform a driver upgrade or downgrade while the data migration is in progress and then restart your computer, the driver will not be able to recognize the volume or the data on it. If you are migrating a system volume, you will not be able to restart your system because the operating system cannot load. If you are migrating a data

volume, you will have to reverse (roll back) that last performed driver update, and then restart the computer to return to a normal state.

Increasing the volume size from Manage Array

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the array you want to manage. The array properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Increase size' next to the volume name. If more than one volume is present on a single array, you will need to increase the size of each volume one at a time.
3. Click 'Yes' to confirm. Caution: Once the data migration starts, the operation cannot be canceled.
4. Once the migration has completed, restart your computer for changes to take effect. Then use Windows Disk Management* to increase the partition size on the volumes, or add another partition.

Increasing the volume size from Manage Volume

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the volume whose size you want to increase. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Increase size'.
3. Click 'Yes' to confirm. Caution: Once the data migration starts, the operation cannot be canceled.
4. Once the migration has completed, restart your computer for changes to take effect. Then use Windows Disk Management* to increase the partition size on the volumes, or add another partition.

Note
To open Windows Disk Manager, click Start, right click My Computer, select Manage, then in the console tree select Disk Management

23.4.1.5 Enabling Disk Data Cache

Enabling the disk data cache for all SATA disks on the array allows you to enable cache memory physically present on the disks and use it to speed up data access. This action is only available from Manage Array because the data cache must be in the same state across all disks that are part of a single array.

Under Manage Array, the disk data cache is reported as enabled or disabled for all SATA disks in the array. Under Manage Disk, the disk data cache is reported as enabled or disabled for a specific disk that is part of that array. The option to change this setting is only available from Manage Array.

Warning
Enabling the disk data cache increases the cache size and the amount of cached data that could be lost in the event of a power failure. The risk can be decreased if your computer is connected to an uninterruptable power supply (UPS).

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the array you want to manage. The element properties are now displayed on the left.
2. In the Advanced section, click 'Enable' or 'Disable' depending on the option available.
3. Click 'Yes' to confirm.

4. The page refreshes and now displays the new setting.

23.4.2 Managing Volumes

You must be logged on as an administrator to perform the actions listed in this section.

You can manage existing volumes by clicking a volume in the storage system view under 'Status' or 'Manage'. This allows you to review the volume properties and access all actions associated with that volume, such as renaming, changing type, and deleting.

23.4.2.1 Volume Properties

A volume is an area of storage on one or more SATA disks used within a RAID array. A volume is formatted by using a file system and has a drive letter assigned to it. The volume properties listed below display to the left of the storage system view under 'Manage' and report values specific to the element selected in the view.

RAID volume status table

Status	Description
Normal	Indicates that volume data is fully accessible.
Locked	Indicates that at least one array disk is locked with a password. The volume is visible because at least one other array disk is unlocked. Refer to Unlocking Password-Protected Disks for instructions on unlocking disks.
Degraded	Indicates that one array disk is missing or has failed. A RAID 0 volume cannot be in this state because of the striping configuration.
Failed	• RAID 0 volume: indicates that one or more array disks are missing or have failed. • RAID 1 volume: indicates that both array disks are missing or have failed. • RAID 5 or 10 volume: indicates that two or more array disks are missing or have failed.
Incompatible	Indicates that the volume was moved to another system that does not support the volume type and configuration.
Inaccessible	Indicates that data on the accelerated volume cannot be accessed because it is missing, or that the accelerated volume data is not synchronized with the data on the cache volume.
Unknown	Indicates that an unknown error was detected.

Recovery volume status table

Status	Description
Normal	Indicates that volume data is fully accessible.
Locked	Indicates that at least one array disk is locked with a password. The volume is visible because at least one other array disk is unlocked. Refer to Unlocking Password-Protected Disks for instructions on unlocking disks.

Degraded	• The recovery disk has failed, or • The master disk is missing or has failed and the volume is running off the recovery disk.
Failed	Indicates that both array disks have failed.
Incompatible	Indicates that the volume was moved to another system that does not support the volume type and configuration.
Unknown	Indicates that an unknown error was detected.
Power-saving mode	Indicates that the computer is running on battery power. If the volume is in continuous update mode, data updates are paused and will resume as soon as the computer is reconnected to the power supply.
Data update needed	Indicates that the recovery disk does not have a redundant copy of the data on the master disk, and you should request an update.
Running off recovery disk	Indicates that the recovery disk is the designated source drive in the volume.
Master disk read-only	Indicates that the recovery disk is the designated source drive in the volume, and that the master disk files are accessed. In this state, data recoveries from the recovery disk are not available.
Recovery disk read-only	Indicates that the recovery disk files are accessed. In this state, data updates are not available.

Busy volume states table

Status	Description
Initializing	Indicates that data on a volume is being synchronized. This step is required prior to verifying or verifying and repairing data on a volume.
Verifying	Indicates that the volume is being scanned to detect data inconsistencies.
Verifying and repairing	Indicates that the volume is being scanned to detect data inconsistencies, and errors are being repaired. This state does not apply to a RAID 0 volume because errors cannot be repaired.
Migrating data	Indicates that data is being reorganized on the volume. This state displays when a system volume is created, the volume size is increased, or the type is changed to different RAID configuration.
Rebuilding	Indicates that data redundancy is being restored across all disks associated with the volume. A RAID 0 volume cannot be in this state because of the striping configuration.
Recovering data	Indicates that data on the master disk is being overridden by all the data on the recovery disk. This state only applies to recovery volumes.
Updating data	Indicates that the latest master disk changes are being copied to the recovery disk. This state only applies to recovery volumes.

General parameters table

Parameter	Value
Details	Provides detailed information if a volume is in a state other than normal.
Type	Reports the volume type.
Acceleration mode Size	Reports the acceleration mode for the disk or volume associated with the cache device. Enhanced: Indicates that the disk or volume is accelerated for optimized data protection.

	Maximized: Indicates that the disk or volume is accelerated for optimized input/output performance.
	None: Indicates that no disk or volume is accelerated.
	Busy: Indicates that acceleration is transitioning from maximized to enhanced mode, or that acceleration is being disabled from maximized mode. In the event that errors are detected and a risk of data loss is identified, transitions from maximized mode will start automatically.
	Reports the total capacity of the volume in gigabytes (GB) in the storage system view and in megabytes (MB) in the volume properties under Manage Volume.
Data stripe size	Reports the size of each logical contiguous data block used in the volume for RAID 0, 5, and 10 volumes. The strip size is indicated in kilobytes (KB).
Write-back cache	Reports whether the write-back cache feature is enabled for the volume.
System volume	Reports whether the volume contains system files that are required to start and run the operating system.
Initialized	Reports whether the volume is initialized.
Verification errors found	Reports the number of inconsistencies found during the last volume data verification.
Block with media errors	Reports the number of blocks with media errors found during the last volume data verification.
Physical sector size	Reports the size of each sector that is physically located on the disk.
Logical sector size	Reports the size of data collection blocks.
Details	Provides detailed information if a volume is in a state other than normal.

23.4.2.2 Renaming a Volume

You can change the name assigned to a volume present in your storage system at any time. The name change will take effect immediately.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the volume that you want to rename. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Rename'.
3. Type a new volume name, and then click 'OK'.

Note
Volume names are limited to 16 English alphanumeric and special characters including spaces, but cannot include a backslash "\".

23.4.2.3 Rebuilding a Volume

When a volume is reported as degraded because of a failed or missing disk, the disk must be replaced or reconnected and the volume be rebuilt in order to maintain fault-tolerance. The option to rebuild is only available when a compatible disk is connected, available and normal. If a spare disk is available, the rebuild process will start

automatically when a disk fails or is missing. For RAID 0 volumes, the rebuild process will start automatically only when one of its members is reported as at risk.

Warning
Completing this action will permanently delete existing data on the new disk and make any other volume on the array inaccessible. We recommend you backup valuable before continuing.

Rebuilding from 'Status' (manually)

1. Verify that the volume is reported as degraded in the Manage subsection. If you have more than one volume listed in this section, you will need to fix the issues reported one at a time.
2. Click 'Rebuild to another disk' next to the volume you want to rebuild.
3. In the Rebuild Volume dialog, select the disk that will replace the failed disk. Only compatible disks in a normal state will be displayed. Refer to Volume Requirements for more information.
4. Click 'OK' to confirm.
5. The volume starts rebuilding and the page refreshes displaying the progress of the operation. You can use other applications during this time and you will be notified when the process has successfully completed.

Rebuilding from 'Manage' (manually)

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the volume you want to rebuild. The element properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Rebuild to another disk', and then follow the procedure described above.

23.4.2.4 Recovering Data

Recovering data to the master disk allows you to maintain full data redundancy on the recovery volume and keep the volume data healthy. This action is only available if a recovery volume is present and running off the recovery disk.

You may have to recover data if:

- Data on the recovery and master disk is not synchronized and full data redundancy is at risk.
- Data on the master disk is invalid or inaccessible.

Warning
Completing the action will override existing data on the master disk and update it with the data on the recovery disk. Backup all valuable data before continuing.

1. Under 'Status', in the Manage subsection, click 'Recover data' or click the recovery volume in the storage system view, and then click 'Recover data'.
2. Click 'Yes' to confirm.
3. The recovery operation starts immediately. You can follow the progress by hovering over the notification area icon or by reviewing the volume status under 'Status' or 'Manage'.

Note
If master disk is removed while the data recovery is in progress and is then reconnected, the operation will resume automatically from where it stopped as long as the volume is in on request update mode. If the volume is in continuous update

mode, you will need to restart the operation by following the procedure described above,

23.4.2.5 Resetting Volume to Normal

This action is only available when a volume is reported as failed, but both array disks are present and normal, and allows you to access and try recovering healthy volume data.

In most cases, this situation will occur after one or more array disks was reported as failed or at risk, and then reset to normal.

Completing this action resets the volume state by ignoring previous events and does not repair data. Any data loss or corruption that may have occurred as a result of prior hardware failure or change of state remains. We recommend that you back up accessible data and replace failed hardware as soon as possible to prevent further data loss.

1. Under 'Status', in the Manage subsection, click 'Reset volume to normal'. You can also perform this action from Manage Volume, which is accessible by clicking the RAID 0 volume in the storage system view.
2. Click 'Yes' to confirm.
3. The page refreshes and the volume displays as normal. If the operation failed to return the volume to a healthy state, visit Intel's online support web site for more options.

23.4.2.6 Changing Volume Type

You can choose to change the type of an existing volume based on your storage system needs. The following configurations are possible:

Change type from	To
2-disk recovery volume **Note** Only available if the recovery volume is in continuous update mode	2-disk RAID 1
2-disk RAID 1	2-disk recovery volume **Note** No other volumes can be present on the system. The RAID 1 volume must be less than 1.3125 TB and include 100% of the available space on the array
2-disk RAID 1	2-disk RAID 0 3, 4, 5 or 6-disk RAID 0 3, 4, 5 or 6-disk RAID 5
2-disk RAID 0	3, 4, 5 or 6-disk RAID 5
3-disk RAID 0	4, 5 or 6-disk RAID 5

4-disk RAID 0	5 or 6-disk RAID 5
4-disk RAID 10	4, 5 or 6-disk RAID 5

Note
Before starting, refer to the system and volume requirements to determine which RAID types are supported by your computer and make sure the required number of SATA disks are connected. The Intel® Chipset provides support for the creation of all RAID volume types and for up to six SATA ports on a mobile platform. Changing volume type does not require re-installation of the operating system

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the volume that you want to modify. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Change type'.
3. In the 'Change Volume Type' dialog, type a new name if you want to change the default name.
4. Select the new volume type, and then click 'OK'. Caution: Once the data migration starts, the operation cannot be canceled.
5. Once the migration has completed, the 'Manage' page refreshes and reports the new volume type.

Warning
All applications and existing volume data remain intact, but any existing data on the disks added to enable this operation will be permanently deleted. Backup data before adding these disks.

If you perform a driver upgrade or downgrade while the data migration is in progress and then restart your computer, the driver will not be able to recognize the volume or the data on it. If you are migrating a system volume, you will not be able to restart your system because the operating system cannot load. If you are migrating a data volume, you will have to reverse (roll back) that last performed driver update, and then restart the computer to return to a normal state.

23.4.2.7 Increasing Volume Size

You can increase the size of a RAID volume by using the remaining available space on the array. A minimum of 32 MB must be available for this action to be available. Hovering over the array name in the storage system view displays the amount of available space in MB.

After creating a volume with an array allocation set to less than 100% in the Configure Volume step, you will be able to increase the volume size by the amount of available space on that array. If two volumes are present on a single array and capacity expansion is possible, only the space available at the end of the second volume will be used to increase the volume size.

This option is only available if:

- A RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5 and/or RAID 10 volume is present,

- The array allocation for the volume is less than 100% and space is available on the existing array.

Warning
If you perform a driver upgrade or downgrade while the data migration is in progress and then restart your computer, the driver will not be able to recognize the volume or the data on it. If you are migrating a system volume, you will not be able to restart your system because the operating system cannot load. If you are migrating a data volume, you will have to reverse (roll back) that last performed driver update, and then restart the computer to return to a normal state.

Increasing the volume size from Manage Array

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the array you want to manage. The array properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Increase size' next to the volume name. If more than one volume is present on a single array, you will need to increase the size of each volume one at a time.
3. Click 'Yes' to confirm. Caution: Once the data migration starts, the operation cannot be canceled.
4. Once the migration has completed, restart your computer for changes to take effect. Then use Windows Disk Management* to increase the partition size on the volumes, or add another partition.

Increasing the volume size from Manage Volume

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the volume whose size you want to increase. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Increase size'.
3. Click 'Yes' to confirm. Caution: Once the data migration starts, the operation cannot be canceled.
4. Once the migration has completed, restart your computer for changes to take effect. Then use Windows Disk Management* to increase the partition size on the volumes, or add another partition.

Note
To open Windows Disk Manager, click Start, right click My Computer, select Manage, then in the console tree select Disk Management

23.4.2.8 Adding a Disk to a Volume

You can add one or more SATA disks to an existing array to increase the system storage capacity. This feature can be useful if you want to change to a volume type that requires additional disks.

This option is only available if:

- A RAID 0 and/or a RAID 5 volume is present,
- One or more SATA disks are connected to the computer and available,
- The available disk matches the internal or external connection type of the existing array disks. You cannot add an external disk to an array that includes internal disks, and vice versa. In specific advanced system configurations, this condition may not apply.

Refer to Connecting a Disk under Managing Disks for more information on installing SATA disks on your computer.

Warning
Any existing data on the available disk used to increase the array size will be permanently deleted. Backup all the data you want to preserve before completing this action.
If you perform a driver upgrade or downgrade while the data migration is in progress and then restart your computer, the driver will not be able to recognize the volume or the data on it. If you are migrating a system volume, you will not be able to restart your system because the operating system cannot load. If you are migrating a data volume, you will have to reverse (roll back) that last performed driver update, and then restart the computer to return to a normal state

This action can also be performed from Manage Array. Refer to the Adding a Disk to an Array section for more information.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the volume to which you want to add a disk. The element properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Add disk'.
3. Select the disk you want to use to increase the array capacity.
4. Click 'Add Disk'. Caution: Once the data migration starts, the operation cannot be canceled.
5. Once the migration has completed, restart your computer for changes to take effect. Then use Windows Disk Management* to increase the partition size on the volumes for which a disk was added, or add another partition.

Note
To open Windows Disk Manager, click Start, right click My Computer, select Manage, then in the console tree select Disk Management

23.4.2.9 Changing Update Mode

A recovery volume gives you the flexibility to choose between updating data on the recovery disk continuously or on request.

In continuous update mode, the latest master disk changes are copied to the recovery disk automatically, as long as both disks are connected to the computer. In on request mode, the latest master disk changes are copied to the recovery disk only when you request a data update.

The current update mode is reported in the volume properties under Manage Volume. By default, the recovery volume is created in continuous update mode.

Note
This action is only available if a recovery volume is present and in normal state. If the recovery volume is read-only because the master or recovery disk files are accessed, you will need to hide the files before the update mode can be changed.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click ‘Change mode’, and then click 'Yes' to confirm.
3. The page refreshes and the volume properties report the new update mode.

23.4.2.10 Updating Data

You can manually copy the latest master disk changes to the recovery disk at any given time; this action allows you to synchronize data on the recovery volume, improving data protection and lowering the risk of losing valuable data in the event of a disk failure. When you request an update, only changes since the last update are copied.

Note
This action is only available if a recovery volume is present, and in ‘on request’ update mode.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click ‘Update data’.
3. The update process can be instantaneous or may take a while depending on the amount of data being copied. You can follow the progress by hovering over the notification area icon or by reviewing the volume status under 'Status' or 'Manage'.

Note
You can follow the progress of the update by hovering over the notification area icon or under ‘Status’ or Manage Volume.

23.4.2.11 Accessing Master or Recovery Disk Files

This action is only available if a recovery volume is present, in a normal state, and in on request update mode.

You can view the recovery or master disk files using Windows Explorer* depending on the designated source drive of the recovery volume. This feature can be useful when a data recovery from or to the master disk is necessary.

Accessing recovery disk files

This action is only available if the master disk is the designated source drive and the volume is running off that disk.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Access recovery disk files'.
3. Windows Explorer opens and displays the files located on the recovery disk.

Accessing master disk files
This action is only available if the recovery disk is the designated source drive and the volume is running off that disk.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Access master disk files'.
3. Windows Explorer opens and displays the files located on the master disk.

Note
When files have been accessed, the disk is displayed as missing from the array, and becomes available. Also, the volume is set to read-only and data updates are not available in this state. Hiding disk files will make the volume writable and allow data updates.

You can also access master or recovery disk files from Manage Disk.

23.4.2.12 Hiding Master or Recovery Disk Files

This action is only available if a recovery volume is present and disk files have been accessed.

When you are done viewing master or recovery disk files, you can hide the display of the files from Windows Explorer*. Once the disk files are hidden, the disk becomes writable, and data updates on the volume are available.

Hiding recovery disk files
This action is only available if the master disk is the designated source drive and the volume is running off that disk.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click ‘Hide recovery disk files’.
3. The disk files no longer display in Windows Explorer.
4. The page refreshes and data updates on the volume are now available.

Hiding master disk files
This action is only available if the recovery disk is the designated source drive and the volume is running off that disk.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click ‘Hide master disk files’.
3. The disk files no longer display in Windows Explorer.
4. The page refreshes and data updates on the volume are now available.

Note
You can also hide master or recovery disk files from Manage Disk

23.4.2.13 Deleting a Volume

Use caution: you cannot recover data once a volume is deleted.

When a volume is deleted, you create available space that can be used to create new volumes. Note that you cannot delete a system volume using this application because the operating system needs the system files to run correctly. Also, if the volume is a recovery volume and the master or recovery disk files are accessed, you will need to hide these files before the volume can be deleted.

Warning
When a volume is deleted, all existing data on all disks that are a part of the selected volume is permanently lost. It is recommended to complete a backup of all valuable data before continuing.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the volume you want to delete. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Delete volume'.
3. Review the warning message, and click 'Yes' to delete the volume.
4. The 'Status' page refreshes and displays the resulting available space in the storage system view. You can now use it to create a new volume.

23.4.2.14 Setting the Data Strip Size

You can assign a data strip size to a volume while creating a new volume or while changing the type of an existing volume. You cannot change the strip size of an existing volume without changing its type.

The strip size refers to each logical contiguous data block used in a RAID 0, RAID 5, or RAID 10 volume. This setting is not available for RAID 1 or recovery volumes, due to their redundant configuration. The default value is the recommended strip size based on the system configuration and the volume type selected; changing the pre-selection is best suited for advanced users.

The following table describes the usage scenarios for the typical strip sizes.

Usage scenarios for supported strip sizes*

Strip Size	Description	RAID Types
4 KB	Best for Web Servers (fast read transfer rate with slow write transfer rate).	RAID 0, 10
8 KB	Best for databases (fast read transfer rate with faster write transfer rate than with 4KB strips).	RAID 0, 10
16 KB	Good for sequential transfers.	RAID 0, 5, 10
32 KB	Best for sequential transfers.	RAID 0, 5, 10

64 KB	Best general purpose strip size.	RAID 0, 5, 10
128 KB	Best for audio and video editing.	RAID 0, 5

*Disclaimer: The data provided in this table may vary based on the brand, type, size, and speed of the disks used.

Setting the strip size when creating a volume

1. Under 'Status', click ‘Create’ or ‘Create a custom volume’.
2. Select the volume type, and then click 'Next'.
3. Make the required disk selection, and then select a new data strip size from the drop-down list in the Advanced section.
4. Complete the volume creation process as described in the Creation Process topic.

Setting the strip size when changing volume type

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the RAID volume that you want to modify. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Change type'.
3. Make the necessary volume type and disk selections, and then select a new data strip size.
4. Click ‘OK’ to change the type of the existing volume.
5. The ‘Manage’ page refreshes and reports the new volume configuration.

Available Strip Size Configurations

	RAID 0	RAID 5	RAID 10
Default			
SATA disks	128 KB	64 KB	64 KB
Solid state disks	16 KB	128 KB	16 KB
Options	4 KB, 8 KB, 16 KB, 32 KB, 64 KB, 128 KB.	16 KB, 32 KB, 64 KB, 128 KB.	4 KB, 8 KB, 16 KB, 32 KB, 64 KB.

23.4.2.15 Enabling Volume Write-back Cache

You can improve the read/write performance of a RAID or recovery volume by enabling the write-back cache on one or all volumes on an array. When this feature is enabled, data may be temporarily stored in the cache memory before being written to the physical disks. Multiple I/O requests may be grouped together to improve performance. By default, the write-back cache is disabled.

Warning
While this feature highly improves the volume and array performance, it also increases the amount of cached data that could be lost in the event of a power failure. This risk can be lowered if your computer is connected to an uninterruptable power supply (UPS)

Enabling the volume write-back cache

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the volume for which you want to enable the write-back cache. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. In the Advanced section, click 'Enable', and then click 'Yes' to confirm.

3. The page refreshes and the write-back cache is now enabled.

Note
If your computer is running on battery and a recovery volume is present, the option to enable the write-back cache is not available because the recovery disk is offline and data updates are not available. If this feature was enabled prior to running the battery, write-back cache activity would be temporarily disabled until you reconnect your computer to the power supply.

Disabling the volume write-back cache

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the volume for which you want to disable the write-back cache. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. In the Advanced section, click 'Disable', and then click 'Yes' to confirm.
3. The page refreshes and the write-back cache is now disabled.

23.4.2.16 Initializing a Volume

Initializing a volume is the process of synchronizing all redundant data on a volume prior to verifying or verifying and repairing that data. If you attempt to start a verification process for a volume that has not been initialized, you will be prompted to do so.

Initializing a volume

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the volume that you want to initialize. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Initialize'.
3. Click 'OK' to start the initialization process. Caution: Once the data migration starts, the operation cannot be canceled.

Initializing a volume when verifying data

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the volume that you want to verify. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Verify'.
3. When prompted to initialize the volume before verifying data, click 'OK' to start the initialization process. Caution: Once the data migration starts, the operation cannot be canceled.
4. Once complete, click 'Verify' to start the verification process.

Note
While inititialization is in progress, you can view the status in the notifications area by hovering over the Intel(R) Rapid Storage Technology icon, or in the application under Staus or Manage Volume.

Warning
The initializating process could take a while depending on the number and size of the disks. You can continue using array disks and other applications during this time.

Closing the application, or powering off and restarting your computer will not disrupt the progress of this operation.

23.4.2.17 Verifying and Repairing Data

You can verify data on an existing volume by identifying and repairing inconsistencies. Running this operation on a regular basis helps you keep valuable data and the overall storage system healthy.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the volume that you want to verify. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Verify'.
3. Select the check box if you want errors found to be repaired automatically during the verification process.
4. Click 'OK' to start the verification process.

Note
Data on a volume cannot be verified and repaired unless the volume has been initialized first. If you attempt to start a verification process for a volume that is not initialized, you will be prompted to first initialize the volume. Based on its configuration, a RAID 0 volume cannot be repaired because of the lack of redundancy.

23.4.2.18 Swapping Disks

You can change the order of designation for array disks in a recovery volume by setting the master disk as the destination drive and the recovery disk as the source drive. This action is best suited for advanced users.

Note
This action is only available if a recovery volume is present, normal, and in continuous update mode.

Swapping disks can be useful if:

- You selected the wrong disk as the master disk when you created the recovery volume,
- You think one of the disks is failing,
- You replaced the recovery disk with a faster, newer disk, and want to run off that device once it has been updated.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. In the Advanced section, click 'Swap master and recovery disks'.
3. Click 'Yes' to confirm.
4. Hover over each disk in the storage system view to review their new usage.

23.4.3 Managing Disks

You must be logged on as an administrator to perform the actions listed in this section.

You can manage disks by clicking a selected disk in the storage system view under 'Status' or 'Manage'. This allows you to review the properties and access all actions associated with that disk, such as unlocking a password-protected disk or marking a disk as spare. Depending on their usage or status, some actions may not be available.

23.4.3.1 Disk Properties

The disk properties listed below display to the left of the storage system view under 'Manage' and report values such as usage and status that are specific to the disk selected in the view. Based on the detailed information provided, you can make changes to the way each disk is configured, or take action on one or more disk to keep your overall storage system healthy.

Parameter	Value
Port	Reports the port number to which the disk or device is attached.
Port location	Reports whether the port is internal or external.
Usage	Array disk: a disk that has been grouped with other disks to form an array containing RAID volumes. Master disk: the disk that is the designated source drive in a recovery volume. Recovery disk: the disk that is the designated destination drive in a recovery volume. Spare: the disk has been designated as the destination drive for automatic volume rebuilds in the event of a failed, missing or at risk array disk. For RAID 0 volumes, automatic rebuilds will only occur when one of its array disks is reported as at risk. Available: the disk is physically connected to the computer, healthy, and available to be used in an array or as a spare disk. **Warning** Assigning an available disk to an array or marking it as a spare will permanently delete any existing data on that disk. Unknown: the disk is available but contains metadata that cannot be displayed in the operating system. Even though the disk is reported as normal, you will need to clear and reset the disk to make the disk available.
Acceleration mode	Reports the acceleration mode for the disk or volume associated with the cache device. Enhanced: Indicates that the disk or volume is accelerated for optimized data protection. Maximized: Indicates that the disk or volume is accelerated for optimized input/output performance. None: Indicates that no disk or volume is accelerated.

	Busy: Indicates that acceleration is transitioning from maximized to enhanced mode, or that acceleration is being disabled from maximized mode. In the event that errors are detected and a risk of data loss is identified, transitions from maximized mode will start automatically.
Status	Normal: the disk is present, functioning as expected, and unlocked. Locked: the disk is password-protected. Note: if a volume includes at least one locked disk, the volume will display as locked. At risk: an impending error condition was detected on the disk and it is now at risk of failure. Missing: the disk is not present or physically connected to the computer. Failed: the disk has failed to properly complete read and write operations in a timely manner, and it has exceeded its recoverable error threshold. Offline: indicates that an array disk is locked, that the recovery volume is in on request update mode, or that your computer is running on battery and data updates to the recovery volume are not available.
Size	Reports the total capacity of the disk in megabytes (MB) in the disk properties and in gigabytes (GB) in the storage system view.
Serial number	Reports the manufacturer's serial number for the disk.
Model	Reports the model number of the disk.
Firmware	Reports the version of the firmware found in the disk.
System disk	Reports whether the disk contains system files that are required to start and run the operating system.
Password protected	Reports whether the disk is protected with a password.
Disk data cache	Reports whether the data cache is enabled on this disk. This feature is controlled at the array level.
Native command queuing	Reports whether the disk supports this feature.
SATA transfer rate	Reports the data transfer rate between the SATA controller and the SATA disk. The supported rates are: • SATA 1.5 Gb/s (generation 1) • SATA 3 Gb/s (generation 2) • SATA 6 Gb/s (generation 3) The data transfer rate reported is based on the Intel® Chipset and SATA disks present in your system.
Physical sector size	Reports the size of physical sectors on the disk (bytes).
Logical sector size	Reports the size of logical sectors on the disk (bytes).

23.4.3.2 Unlocking Password-Protected Disks**

You can unlock a password-protected disk by entering the password which allows you to access data or use that disk to create a volume. The password is setup through the

system BIOS. Locked disks can be identified with the lock icon appended to them and display a 'Locked' status in the disk properties.

23.4.3.3 Marking a Disk as Spare

This action is only available for non-system disks in a normal state. Also, unless your mobile computer is equipped with the Intel® 5 Series Chipset or later, which provides support for up to six SATA ports, you will not be able to mark a disk as a spare. Most mobile computers are limited to one internal and one external disk, which are used to create the volume.

Marking a disk as a spare allows you to designate an available SATA disk as the default destination for automatic volume rebuilds in the event of a failed, missing or at risk array disk. However, for RAID 0 volumes, automatic rebuilds will only occur if one of its members is reported at risk.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the disk that you want to mark as a spare. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Mark as spare'.
3. Click 'OK'.

Note
RAID 1, 5, 10, and recovery volumes can use one or more spares.

Warning
When marking a disk as a spare, any existing data on that disk is permanently deleted. Back up all data you want to preserve before starting this action.

If you system is running a version of the RST OROM that does not support disks that are 2TB or larger, you can reset such a disk to available, but disallow the marking of it as a spare.

23.4.3.4 Resetting a Disk to Available

After a disk was marked as spare, you can choose to make that spare disk available again and use it differently. Once available, the disk can be used to create a volume or be added to an existing volume if all other requirements are met.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the disk that you want to reset to available. The volume properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Reset to available'.
3. The page refreshes and the disk usage is now reported as available.

23.4.3.5 Resetting a Disk to Normal

You can reset a SATA disk to normal when the storage system reports one of the following disk statuses:

At risk

A disk is reported at increased risk of failing in the near future that could be due to a slow degradation over time. You can choose to ignore this alert at this time by resetting the disk to normal, but it may re-appear if the disk continues to assert this condition. We recommend that you contact the manufacturer for more information to prevent potential data loss.

Failed
A SATA disk has failed to properly complete read and write operations in a timely manner, and data may be lost. We recommend that you replace the failed disk as soon as possible to return the overall storage system to normal. In this state, data may be lost, but you can try resetting the disk to normal and attempt a data recovery. If the disk operations continue to fail, the disk will return to a failed state immediately.

If the failed disk is an array disk, refer to the Troubleshooting section for guidelines on rebuilding a failed or degraded volume.

1. Under 'Status', in the Manage subsection, locate the disk reported as at risk or failed. You can also perform this action from Manage Disk, which is accessible by clicking the disk in the storage system view.
2. Click 'Reset disk to normal'. The page refreshes instantly, returning to a normal state.

Note
Completing this action clears the event on the disk and does not delete existing data. However, ignoring early warning signs of disk failure may result in data loss.

23.4.3.6 Accessing Disk Files

This action is only available if a recovery volume is present, in a normal state, and is on request update mode.

This feature allows you to view the files on the designated destination drive in a recovery volume using Windows Explorer*. For example, you may want to review the recovery disk files prior to starting a data recovery in the event that data on the master disk is inaccessible or corrupted.

When the volume status is normal, the recovery disk is the designated destination drive and files are accessible. When the volume status is running off the recovery disk, the master disk is the designated destination drive and files are accessible. You can review the usage of each disk by hovering over the array disks in the storage system view or by clicking one of the disks to review its properties under Manage Disk.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery or the master disk depending on the volume status. The disk properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Access files'.
3. Windows Explorer opens and displays the files located on the disk.

Note
When files have been accessed, the disk is displayed as missing from the array, and becomes available. Also, the volume is set to read-only and data updates are not available in this state. Hiding disk files will make the volume writable and allow data updates.

Warning
Windows Explorer will not open if the disk does not have any partitions on it.

23.4.3.7 Hiding Disk Files

This action is only available if a recovery volume is present and disk files have been accessed.

When you are done viewing master or recovery disk files, you can hide the display of the files from Windows Explorer*. Once the disk files are hidden, the disk becomes writable, and data updates on the volume are available.

1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the disk whose files are accessed. The disk properties are now displayed on the left.
2. Click 'Hide files'.
3. The disk files no longer display in Windows Explorer.
4. The page refreshes and data updates on the volume are now available.

Note
You can also hide master or recovery disk files from Manage Volume.

23.4.3.8 Connecting a Disk

Installing new hardware is one of the steps you may have to take to keep you storage system healthy or to extend the life of a computer that is running out of storage space.

Intel® Rapid Storage Technology provides hot plug support, which is a feature that allows SATA disks to be removed or inserted while the computer is turned on and the operating system is running. As an example, hot plugging may be used to replace a failed external disk.

Our application provides support for SATA 1.5 Gb/s (generation 1), SATA 3 Gb/s (generation 2), and 6 Gb/s (generation 3) data transfer rates. The rate support depends on the Intel® Chipset and SATA disks present in your system. Visit our Online Support for additional information on chipset features and benefits.

Follow these procedures to replace or connect a disk in case you need to power off your computer:

Replacing a disk

1. Power off your computer.

2. Replace the disk that reports a problem.
3. Turn your computer back on. If the replaced disk was part of an array, you will need to follow the procedure provided in the Troubleshooting section based on the volume state and type.

Note
To install an external disk, plug it into you computer and connect the power cord.

To remove and install an internal disk, you should be comfortable opening your computer case and connecting cables. Follow the manufacturer's installation guide to complete this procedure. If you are replacing the system disk, you will have to re-install the operating system after you connect the disk because the system disk contains the files required to start and run your computer.

Installing a new disk (to increase storage space)

1. Power off your computer.
2. Connect the new disk.
3. Turn your computer back on. During the system startup, the application's option ROM should automatically detect the new disk if it is installed correctly. Once you open the application, verify under 'Status', in the storage system view, that the new disk displays. You can then access management options by clicking that disk.

23.4.4 Managing Ports

A port is a connection point on your computer where you can physically connect a device, such as a SATA disk or ATAPI device. A port transfers I/O data between the device and the computer.

If a port is reported as empty in the storage system view, you can use that port to connect a new device in order to increase the storage system capacity. Currently, the maximum number of internal ports that can be used to connect devices is six.

The port properties listed below display to the left of the storage system view under 'Manage' and report values specific to the element selected in the view.

Parameter	Value
Port	Reports the port number to which the disk or device is attached.
Port location	Reports whether the port is internal or external.

23.4.5 Managing ATAPI Devices

An ATAPI device is a mass storage device with a parallel interface such as a CD-ROM, DVD/Blu-ray disc, tape drive, or solid-state disk. The ATAPI properties listed below display to the left of the storage system view under 'Manage' and report values specific to the selected element.

Parameter	Value

Port	Reports the port number to which the disk or device is attached.
Port location	Reports whether the port is internal or external.
Serial number	Reports the manufacturer's serial number for the device.
Model	Reports the model number of the device.
Firmware	Reports the version of the firmware found in the device.
SATA transfer rate	Reports the transfer mode between the SATA controller and the ATAPI device. The typical values for this parameter are: • SATA 1.5 Gb/s (generation 1) • SATA 3 Gb/s (generation 2) • SATA 6 Gb/s (generation 3) The data transfer rate reported is based on the Intel® Chipset and SATA disks present in your system.

23.4.6 Managing Solid-State Hybrid Drives (SSHD)

To increase performance, some hard drive manufactures are now including non-volatile memory to be used as a data cache on hard drives. These drives are called Solid-State Hybrid Drives. Hybrid Hinting is a feature by which the RST driver will send information to a SSHD, notifying the drive which data would be best to store in the data cache. There are no extra steps to manage SSHD's.

RST enables Hybrid Hinting when the following minimum requirements are met:

- SSHD must have a minimum of 8GB of non-volatile cache.
- SSHD must have a maximum of 1TB of non-volatile cache.
- SSHD is attached to a supported SKU for Intel® Smart Response Technology for Hybrid Drive Acceleration. (See section 21.1.2 for SKU support)

23.5 Accelerating the Storage System

You can configure an internal solid state disk to be used as a non-volatile intelligent caching for a system or non-system disk or volume that's present on your system. Moving frequently accessed data over to the cache allows you to improve overall system performance, increase read/write access times, and reduce start up times without adding more system memory.

This feature also increases the power efficiency of a mobile computer by retaining stored data and reading data from the cache instead of the SATA disk itself.

Accelerate is only available if the requirements listed in this section under Cache Device Properties are met.

23.5.1 Cache Device Properties

The Performance tab-> enable acceleration page in the UI are only available if the following requirements are met:

- See Section 20 for requirements
- Operating system: all supported OS for this release (see section 2.1.5).
- CPU: Core or Premium
- BIOS: RAID-Ready system and Accelerate feature bit is set.
- An internal SATA solid state disk is present with a minimum capacity of 16 GB.
- A hard disk or volume (array members must all be hard disks) is eligible for acceleration.
- No recovery volume is present.

Limitations

- The maximum cache size is 64 GB.
- Only one disk or volume at a time can be accelerated per system.
- If two volumes are present on a single array (they share the same array of disks), neither volume can be accelerated.
- Once a volume is accelerated, a second volume cannot be added to the same array.
- Once a solid state disk is configured to be used as a cache device, the option to create a recovery volume is no longer available. Recovery volumes do not support system configurations with multiple volumes.

Solid State Disk Properties

Parameter	Value
Port	Reports the port number to which the solid state disk is attached.
Port location	Reports that the solid state disk is internal.
Status	Reports the state of health of the internal solid state disk present in the system.
	Normal: Indicates that the solid state disk is present, functioning as expected, and unlocked.
	Failed: Indicates that the solid state disk has failed to properly complete read and write operations in a timely manner, and it has exceeded its recoverable error threshold.
	At risk:
	Busy: Indicates that acceleration is transitioning from maximized to enhanced mode, or that cache data is being deleted in order to disable acceleration. In some cases, these transitions will start automatically in the event that errors are detected and a risk of data loss is identified.
Type	Reports that the device is a solid state disk.
Usage	Reports that the solid state disk is configured to be used as a cache device.
Size	Reports that the solid state disk is configured to be used as a cache device.
Serial number	Reports the manufacturer's serial number for the internal solid state disk.
Model	Reports the model number of the solid state disk.
Firmware	Reports the version of the firmware found in the solid state disk.

Password protected	Reports whether the solid state disk is password-protected.
Disk data cache	Reports that the data cache is enabled on the solid state disk. When a solid state disk is configured as a cache device, this setting can only be changed at the operating system level.
Native command queuing	Reports whether the solid state disk supports this feature.
SATA transfer rate	Reports the data transfer rate between the SATA controller and the SATA solid state disk. The supported rates are: • SATA 1.5 Gb/s (generation 1) • SATA 3 Gb/s (generation 2) • SATA 6 Gb/s (generation 3) The data transfer rate reported is based on the Intel® Chipset and SATA disks present in your system.
Physical sector size	Reports the size of physical sectors on the solid state disk (bytes).
Logical sector size	Reports the size of logical sectors on the solid state disk (bytes).
Accelerated device	Indicates the location of the disk or the name of the volume that is currently accelerated by the cache device.
Acceleration mode	Reports the acceleration mode for the disk or volume associated with the cache device . Enhanced: Indicates that the disk or volume is accelerated for optimized data protection. Maximized: Indicates that the disk or volume is accelerated for optimized input/output performance. None: Indicates that no disk or volume is accelerated.

Cache and Simple Data Volume Properties

Parameter	Value
Name	Reports the name of the volume.
Status	Normal: For simple data volumes, indicates that volume data is fully accessible. For cache volumes, indicates that cache data is fully accessible, and that caching activity with the associated disk or volume is occurring under healthy conditions. Failing: Indicates that a SMART event was detected on the solid state disk that is used as a cache device. Failed: Indicates that the cache volume has exceeded its recoverable error threshold, and that read and write operations are no longer occurring.
Type	Indicates that the single-disk RAID 0 volume is a cache volume.
Data stripe size	Indicates that the single-disk RAID 0 volume is a cache volume.
Allocated cache size	Reports the volume capacity used for cache memory.
Write-back cache	Reports whether the write-back cache feature is enabled for the volume.
Physical sector size	Reports the size of each sector that is physically located on the disk.
Logical sector size	Reports the size of data collection blocks.

Accelerated Disk or Volume Properties

Parameter	Value
Acceleration mode	Reports the acceleration mode for the disk or volume associated with the cache device.

	Enhanced: Indicates that the disk or volume is accelerated for optimized data protection. Maximized: Indicates that the disk or volume is accelerated for optimized input/output performance. Busy: Indicates that acceleration is transitioning from maximized to enhanced mode, or that acceleration is being disabled from maximized mode. In the event that errors are detected and a risk of data loss is identified, transitions from maximized mode will start automatically.

23.5.2 Enabling Acceleration

You can enable acceleration in order to improve the performance for a SATA hard disk or a RAID volume that includes only SATA hard disks. This operation caches its contents using a non-volatile memory device (a solid state disk) that is attached to an AHCI port.

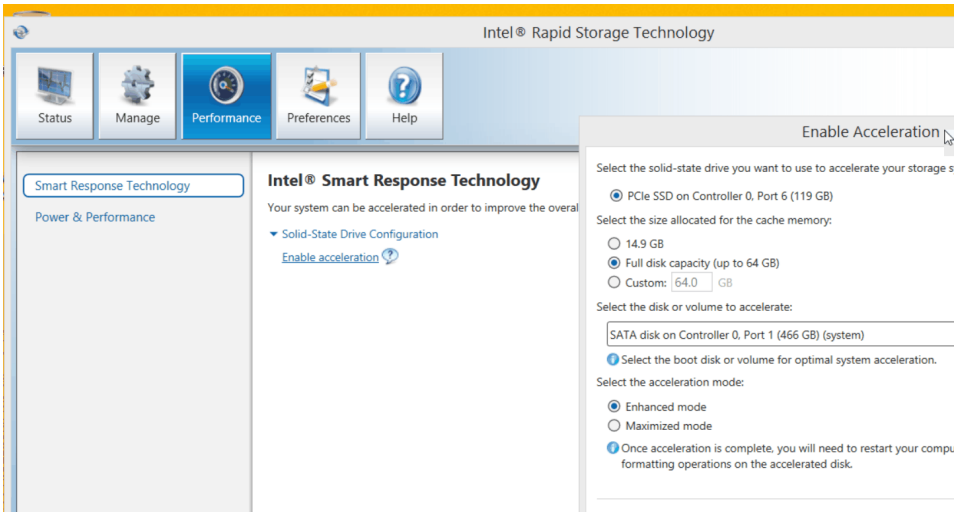
Enabling acceleration allows you to:

- Use a solid state disk as a cache device: The maximum cache size is 64 GB.
- Accelerate one system or non-system disk or volume present in the system by associating it with the cache volume, and subsequently caching its content.
- Configure acceleration in enhanced (optimized for data protection) or maximized mode (optimized for input/output performance). See below for more information on the acceleration modes.
- If the solid state disk used as a cache device is larger than 64 GB and has a minimum of 4 GB of additional space, a second single-disk RAID 0 volume will be automatically created which can be used for simple data storage.

Enabling Acceleration

Follow these steps to enable acceleration:

1. From the Performance Page, Click 'Intel Smart Response Technology' from the left side panel. Click Enable acceleration.



2. Select the solid state disk you want to use as a cache device.
3. Select the portion of the solid state disk you want to use to store non-volatile cache memory. Any remaining space on the solid state disk may

be used for data storage using the simple data single-disk RAID 0 volume that is automatically created.

4. Select the disk or volume you want to accelerate. We highly recommend that you accelerate the system volume or system disk for maximum performance.
5. Select the acceleration mode you want to use, and then click 'OK'. By default, enhanced mode is selected.
6. The page refreshes and reports the new acceleration configuration in the Acceleration View.

Acceleration modes

Non-volatile cache memory can be enabled in either of the following modes:

- **Enhanced mode (default): Acceleration optimized for data protection.**
  This mode uses the write-through cache method to write data to the cache memory and the disk simultaneously. In the event that the accelerated disk or volume becomes inaccessible, fails, or is disconnected, there is no risk of data loss because data on the disk is always synchronized with the data in the cache memory. For data safety reasons, this mode is the default acceleration setting.

- **Maximized mode: Acceleration optimized for input/output performance.**
  This mode uses the write-back cache method where data is written to the disk at intervals. In the event that the accelerated disk or volume becomes inaccessible, fails, or is disconnected, there is a high risk of data loss. In most cases, data on the disk wasn't synchronized with the data in the cache memory when the event occurred, or new data was written to the disk after the event occurred and it can no longer be synchronized with the cache memory.

23.5.3 Disabling Acceleration

You can disable acceleration on a disk or volume if you want to:

- Enable acceleration on a different disk or volume,
- Return the solid state disk to pass-through,
- Physically move an accelerated disk or volume to another computer.

Completing this action makes any cached data associated with the accelerated disk or volume immediately inaccessible. If the current acceleration mode is maximized, disabling acceleration may take a while to complete, depending on the cache and the solid state disk size. You can use other applications during this time.

1. Click 'Accelerate', and then click 'Disable acceleration'.
2. In the dialog, click 'Yes' to confirm.
3. The page refreshes and reports the acceleration as disabled.

In the event that you are unable to open or access Intel® Rapid Storage Technology due to an application error or operating system issue, you will need to disable acceleration using the option ROM user interface.

1. Restart your computer.
2. Press Ctrl-I to access the main menu of the option ROM user interface.
3. Select ‘Acceleration Options’ from the main menu.
4. Select the accelerated disk or volume.
5. If acceleration is in maximized mode, type 's' to synchronize data from the flash memory to the accelerated disk or volume. Otherwise, go to step 7.
6. Press ‘Y’ to confirm.
7. Type 'r’ to remove acceleration.
8. Press ‘Y’ to confirm.

23.5.4 Changing Acceleration Mode

This action is only available if a disk or volume is currently accelerated. A disk or volume can be accelerated in either of the following modes:

- **Enhanced mode (default): Acceleration optimized for data protection.**
  This mode uses the write-through cache method to write data to the cache memory and the disk simultaneously. In the event that the accelerated disk or volume becomes inaccessible, fails, or is disconnected, there is no risk of data loss because data on the disk is always synchronized with the data in the cache memory. For data safety reasons, this mode is the default acceleration setting.

- **Maximized mode: Acceleration optimized for input/output performance.**
  This mode uses the write-back cache method where data is written to the disk at intervals. In the event that the accelerated disk or volume becomes inaccessible, fails, or is disconnected, there is a high risk of data loss. In most cases, data on the disk wasn’t synchronized with the data in the cache memory when the event occurred, or new data was written to the disk after the event occurred and it can no longer be synchronized with the cache memory.

By default, acceleration is enabled in enhanced mode due to the lower risk of data loss, but you can change acceleration mode at any time as long as the cache volume and accelerated device are in a normal state and caching activity is occurring.

Follow these steps to change the acceleration mode:

1. Click ‘Accelerate’, and then click 'Change mode'.
2. Click 'Yes' to confirm the mode change to either enhanced or maximized, depending on the current acceleration mode.
3. The page refreshes and the new acceleration mode displays under the Acceleration Configuration subsection and the Acceleration View.

Warning
When a device is accelerated in Maximized mode, performance is highly improved but cached data is at higher risk of being lost in the event of a power failure or under other atypical conditions.

Acceleration in a busy state

The acceleration mode will display as busy under the following conditions (by user interaction or automatic transition):

- When changing acceleration mode from maximized to enhanced.
- When disabling acceleration while in maximized mode.

The transition time varies based on the cache and disk sizes. Disk and volume actions will not be available until the acceleration transition has completed, except for renaming and deleting volumes.

23.5.5 Accelerating a Disk or Volume

Once a solid state disk is configured to be used as a cache device, you can choose to accelerate any disk or volume in a normal state that is located on your storage system. We recommend that you accelerate the system disk or volume in order to get the full benefits of the non-volatile cache memory configuration.

Follow these steps to accelerate a disk or volume:

1. Click 'Accelerate', and then click 'Select device'.
2. In the 'Accelerate Disk or Volume' dialog, select the device you want to accelerate.
3. Select the acceleration mode you want to use, and then click 'OK'. By default, enhanced mode is selected.
4. The page refreshes and reports the newly accelerated device in the Acceleration Configuration subsection. The Acceleration View also indicates the accelerated device with the acceleration icon appended to it.

Non-volatile cache memory can be enabled in either of the following modes:

- **Enhanced mode (default): Acceleration optimized for data protection.**
  This mode uses the write-through cache method to write data to the cache memory and the disk simultaneously. In the event that the accelerated disk or volume becomes inaccessible, fails, or is disconnected, there is no risk of data loss because data on the disk is always synchronized with the data in the cache memory. For data safety reasons, this mode is the default acceleration setting.
- **Maximized mode: Acceleration optimized for input/output performance.**
  This mode uses the write-back cache method where data is written to the disk at intervals. In the event that the accelerated disk or volume becomes inaccessible, fails, or is disconnected, there is a high risk of data loss. In most cases, data on the disk wasn't synchronized with the data in the cache memory when the event occurred, or new data was written to the disk after the event occurred and it can no longer be synchronized with the cache memory.

23.5.6 Resetting a Cache Device to Available

This action is only available if a solid state disk is configured as a cache device and there is no accelerated disk or volume present (no association with the cache device). In this situation, you have two options:

- Reset the solid state disk to available and use that device for other purposes.
- Accelerate a disk or volume that is eligible and available for acceleration. Refer to Cache Device Properties for a detailed list of eligibility requirements.

Warning
In the event that a single-disk RAID 0 data volume was created along with a cache volume, resetting the solid state disk to available will delete both volumes. Data on the RAID 0 data volume will be permanently erased. Backup all valuable data before beginning this action.

1. Click ‘Accelerate’.
2. Click 'Reset to available'.
3. In the dialog, select the check box to confirm that you understand that data on the data volume will be permanently deleted.
4. Click 'Yes' to confirm.
5. The 'Accelerate' page refreshes. Under 'Status', the storage system view displays the solid state disk usage as available. The device can now be used for any purpose.

23.5.7 Disassociating the Cache Memory

This action is only available if an issue is reported on the accelerated disk or volume that is associated with the cache device and it is missing. In this state, the acceleration mode is typically reported as unavailable and caching activity is no longer occurring.

If you are unable to resolve the reported issue on the accelerated disk or volume (e.g., degraded or failed volume due to a missing array disk), the only option will be to remove the association between the cache device and the disk or volume.

Once the association between the cache and the accelerated disk or volume is removed, all cache metadata and data is deleted from the cache device. You can then reset the solid state disk to available or accelerate a different disk or volume, as long as the cache device is healthy.

Follow these steps to disassociate the cache memory and the accelerated device:

1. Click ‘Accelerate’.
2. Click ‘Disassociate’.
3. In the 'Disassociate' dialog, click 'Yes' to confirm.
4. The page refreshes and the Acceleration View reports the new configuration. Options to reset the solid state disk to available or to select a new device to accelerate (as long as an eligible disk or volume is available) are now available.

Note
You can also perform this action using the option ROM user interface.

23.6 Preferences

System preferences allow you to decide whether you want the notification area icon to display. In addition, you can select the types of notifications you want to receive, such as storage system warnings or errors, and be notified of any reported problems while the application is closed.

Both administrators and standard users can change the notification area settings using the application or directly from the notification area. Settings changes are applied on a per user basis, and do not affect other users' settings.

Showing system notifications

By default, System preferences are set to show the notification area icon. If you previously chose to hide the notification area icon, follow these steps to display the icon again:

1. Under 'Preferences', select 'Show the notification area icon'.
2. Click 'Apply Changes'. Verify that the icon is now displayed in the notification area.

Hiding system notifications

Once you hide the notification area icon, the service no longer reports storage system information, warnings, or errors through the notification area. You will need to use the application to monitor the health of the storage system. Follow these steps to hide the notification area icon:

1. Under 'Preferences', deselect 'Show the notification area icon'.
2. In the 'Hide Notification Area Icon' dialog, click 'Yes' to confirm.
3. Verify that the icon is no longer displayed in the notification area.

Selecting system notifications

1. Under 'Preferences', make sure that 'Show the notification area icon' is selected.
2. Select the types of notifications you want to receive.

Note

Storage system information provides details on any changes of state other than warnings or errors, such as new disks being detected or locked.

Storage system warnings report the cause for the overall warning state of the storage system, such as a degraded RAID volume due to a missing disk.

Storage subsystem errors report the cause for the overall error state of the storage system, such as a failed volume due to a failed disk.

24 Opal Drive Support

Support for Opal drives was added Beginning with Intel® Rapid Storage Technology version 13.0.

24.1 Opal ATA Commands Supported

The Intel® RST driver will support the following Opal ATA commands on systems in either AHCI or RAID mode (only on pass-thru drives):

- ATA_PASS_THRU_DIRECT IOCTL commands of ATA TRUSTED RECEIVE and ATA TRUSTED SEND.

24.2 Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UI Support

The Intel® RST UI will display information about the Opal disks attached to the SATA controller when the Opal disk is partially or fully Opal locked.

24.3 Opal SCSI Commands Supported

The Intel® RST driver supports translation of the following SCSI Commands on systems in AHCI or RAID mode (only pass-thru disks):

- SCSI_PASS_THROUGH_DIRECT IOCTL commands of SECURITY_PROTOCOL_IN and SECURITY_PROTOCOL_OUT to ATA TRUSTED RECEIVE and ATA TRUSTED SEND.

24.4 Opal UEFI Protocol Supported

The Intel® Rapid Storage Technology UEFI Driver supports the following UEFI Protocol for OPAL Support for systems in RAID mode with the RST UEFI Driver installed:

- EFI_STORAGE_SECURITY_PROTOCOL

25 eDrive Support

Support for eDrives is new for Intel® Rapid Storage Technology version 13.2. eDrive provides transport of Trusted Computing Group (TCG) protocol over 1667.

Intel® RST added support for TCG communication in version 13.0 (see section 24).

25.1 What is an eDrive?

A disk that returns the following value in its IDENTIFY DEVICE DATA ATA response:

Bit 0 of Word 48 =1(Trusted Computing Group Support): Opal SSC Specification.
Bit 7 of Word 69 =1(IEEE 1667 Support): ACS-3 Specification Rev. 5

25.2 SCSI Standard Inquiry Command Response

When a disk is identified as an eDrive, the Intel® RST driver will report IEEE 1667 support in a SCSI Standard Inquiry command response.

25.3 Configurations Supported

eDrive support is similar to Opal Support and will be supported in RAID or AHCI modes on a pass-thru (non-RAID member) drive attached to the SATA controller.

Further details and specifications for eDrives can be found at the IEEE 1667 Workgroup web page: http://www.ieee1667.com

26 Using the BCFS to Differentiate Platform SKUs

Beginning with the Intel® RST 10.x Release and the Intel® 5 Series Express Chipset (codename Ibex Peak), the BIOS Control Feature Set (BCFS) has been enabled to give OEMs the opportunity to customize the Intel® RST features offered on any particular Intel® 5 Series Express Chipset model/SKU and later. OEMs no longer need special Intel® RST OROM images from Intel in order to enable/disable certain desired features for a platform SKU. OEMs can now enable/disable the desired features per platform SKU directly in their BIOS code. By clearing or setting the corresponding bits of the '***Intel RST Feature Capabilities***' register in the Intel chipset's SATA controller MMIO space, OEMs now have greater flexibility in determining what Intel® RST features will be supported per platform model/SKU.

The following sections explain the use of each of the bits in the BCFS, also known as the Software Feature Mask bits.

Note: This document does not cover details on how to setup a system BIOS. For that level of information please contact your platform's BIOS vendor or your Intel field representative to put you in contact with the appropriate Intel BIOS support personnel.

26.1 Configuring the Platform's RAID Related Features

When the BIOS has set the SATA Controller's mode to RAID, the following bits of the 'Intel RST Feature Capabilities' register in the Intel chipset's SATA controller MMIO space will determine what RAID levels will be supported on the platform SKU:

Note: Clearing all RAID level related bits to '0' (that includes the Intel® RRT bit) is an unsupported configuration. The Intel® RST OROM will ignore the BIOS settings and enable all RAID levels (Intel® RRT inclusive).

26.1.1 Configuring the Standard Supported RAID Levels

There are four (4) bits that control the 4 standard RAID levels supported by Intel® Rapid Storage Technology:

Bits	Type	Reset/ Default	Description
3	RWO	1h	**RAID 5 Enable (R5E):** If set to '1', then RAID5 is

			enabled
2	RWO	1h	**R10 Enable (R10E):** If set to '1', then RAID10 is enabled
1	RWO	1h	**RAID 1 Enable (R1E):** If set to '1', then RAID1 is enabled
0	RWO	1h	**R 0 Enable (R0):** If set to '1', then RAID0 is enabled

26.1.1.1 Example Configuration

To configure a platform SKU that offers **only** RAID levels 0 and 10, the bits must be configured as follows:

Bit 0 == 1 (default)

Bit 1 == 0

Bit 2 == 1 (default)

Bit 3 == 0

26.1.2 Configuring Intel® RRT Related RAID Features

There are two (2) bits that control two capabilities/features related to the Intel® RRT feature:

Bits	Type	Reset/ Default	Description
8	RWO	0h	**Intel® RRT Only on ESATA (ROES):** If set to '1', then only Intel® RRT volumes can span internal and eSATA drives. If cleared to '0', then any RAID volume can span internal and eSATA drives.
4	RWO	1h	**Intel® RRT Enable (RSTE)**: If set to '1', then Intel Rapid Recovery Technology is enabled.

26.1.2.1 Example Configuration

To configure a platform SKU that offers Intel® RRT, only RAID level 5, and allows both Intel® RRT and RAID5 Volumes to span disks on both internal and external (eSATA) ports, the bits must be configured as follows (**Note**: an Intel® RRT volume cannot coexist with another RAID level volume at the same time on the platform):

Bit 0 == 0

Bit 1 == 0

Bit 2 == 0

Bit 3 == 1 (default)

Bit 4 == 1 (default)

Bit 8 == 0 (default)

26.1.3 Configuring the Behavior of the OROM UI and Banner

There are three (3) bits that control the behavior of the Intel® RST OROM UI and the Banner Splash Screen that are displayed during POST at system boot-up. Use the following bit configurations to determine whether or not the splash screen will be displayed during post and if so, how long the delay will be before the system continues the boot process:

Bits	Type	Reset/ Default	Description
11:10	RWO	0h	**OROM UI Normal Delay (OUD)**: Values of these two bits specify the delay of the OROM UI Splash Screen in a normal status. 00 – 2 secs (default and previous value) 01 – 4 secs 10 – 6 secs 11 – 8 secs **Note:** If bit 5 == 0, then these values are disregarded **Comment:** Allow OEM to lengthen normal timeout of OROM splash screen so user has more time to hit CTRL+I on keyboard.
5	RWO	1h	**Intel RST OROM UI (RSTOROMUI):** If set to '1' then the OROM UI is shown. Otherwise, no OROM banner or information will be displayed if all disks and RAID volumes are Normal.

26.1.3.1 Example Configuration

To configure a platform SKU that enables the OROM Banner Splash Screen to be displayed for 6 seconds, the bits must be configured as follows:

Bit 5 == 1 (default)

Bit '10' == 0 (default)

Bit '11' = = 1

26.1.4 Configuring Intel® RST UI Capabilities

There is one capability within the Intel® RST UI that is controlled by the BCFS bits. To enable/disable the ability for the Intel® RST UI to unlock password protected disks, use the following bit configurations:

Bits	Type	Reset/ Default	Description
6	RWO	0h	**HDD Unlock (HDDLK):** If set to '1', then HDD password unlock is enabled in the OS.

The default settings for these two features are:

Bit 6 == 0

When this bit is cleared the Intel® RST UI does not display any option to use this feature.

26.1.4.1 Example Configuration

To configure a platform SKU to not allow unlocking passwords from the Intel® RST UI and to allow the UI to activate the disk/port LEDs, the bits must be configured as follows:

Bit 6 == 0 (default)

26.1.5 Configuring the Platform to Support Intel® Smart Response Technology

The BCFS bit is only one of the platform parameters (see section 17.1.1 for all requirements) that determines whether Intel® Smart Response Technology can be enabled on a platform, however, unless this bit is set there will be no support for this feature on the platform.

Bits	Type	Reset/ Default	Description
9	RWO	0h	**Intel® Smart Response Technology Enable Request (SEREQ):** If set to '1', then Smart Response Technology is enabled. If cleared to '0', Smart Response Technology is disabled.

Bit 9 == 1

This enables the Intel® Smart Response Technology feature on the platform SKU.

26.1.6 BIOS Control Feature Set

Bits	Type	Reset	Description
15:14	RO	0h	Reserved.
13:12	RWO	0h	Reserved
11:10	RWO	0h	**OROM UI Normal Delay (OUD)**: Values of these bits specify the delay of the OROM UI Splash Screen in a normal status. 00 – 2 secs (default and previous value) 01 – 4 secs 10 – 6 secs 11 – 8 secs If bit 5 == 0, then these values are disregarded **Comment: Allow OEM to lengthen normal timeout of OROM splash screen so user has more time to hit CTRL+I on keyboard.**
9	RWO	0h	**Intel® Smart Response Technology Request Enable (SEREQ):** If set to '1', then Smart Response Technology is enabled. If cleared to '0', Smart Response Technology is disabled.
8	RWO	0h	**Intel® RRT Only on ESATA (ROES):** If set to '1', then only Intel® RRT volumes can span internal and eSATA drives. If cleared to '0', then any RAID volume can span internal and eSATA drives.
7	RWO	0h	**Reserved**
6	RWO	0h	**Reserved**
5	RWO	1h	**Intel® RST OROM UI (RSTOROMUI):** If set to '1' then the OROM UI is shown. Otherwise, no OROM banner or information will be displayed if all disks and RAID volumes are Normal.
4	RWO	1h	**Intel® RRT Enable (RSTE)**: If set to '1', then Intel Rapid Recovery Technology is enabled
3	RWO	1h	**RAID 5 Enable (R5E):** If set to '1', then RAID5 is enabled
2	RWO	1h	**RAID 10 Enable (R10E):** If set to '1', then RAID10 is enabled
1	RWO	1h	**RAID 1 Enable (R1E):** If set to '1', then RAID1 is enabled
0	RWO	1h	**RAID 0 Enable (R0E):** If set to '1', then RAID0 is enabled

27 Testing, Certification Notes

27.1 Correcting Microsoft* Windows 7 (Win7) WHQL test failure

For Internal SATA ports with interlock switches, the RST driver will set Removable=TRUE in the IRP_MN_QUERY_CAPABILITIES handler. This causes Win7 to show the internal device in its own "container" which is used to describe devices that are external to the system. For example, a CD-ROM on an interlocked switch in a Win7 system, under 'Devices and Printers',
You can see that the CD-ROM on the interlocked SATA port shows up separately in the top-level 'Devices' view. This can result in a platform WHQL test failure.

There is a whitepaper describing use of Removable device capability bits on Win7 by bus drivers:
http://www.microsoft.com/whdc/Device/DeviceExperience/ContainerIDs.mspx.

In order to correct this issue to pass the platform WHQL test, RST recommends the OEM to take the following action:

In the system BIOS, define an _EJ0 ACPI method on the interlocked port. _EJ0 will signal to the ACPI driver to set Removable for the RST driver and still mark the device as internal to the system such that it does not show in its own container. The implementation is to use a registry key for each port to tell RST whether to set Removable bit or not. If _EJ0 ACPI method is defined in the system BIOS by the manufacturers, they can tell RST not to set the Removable bit. For example:

[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\iaStor\Parameters\Port1]
"EJ0IsDefined"=dword:1
If 1, _EJ0 will set Removable bit instead of RST. If 0, no _EJ0 defined so RST will set Removable bit. The default value is 0.

28 Glossary

Term	Definition
ATA	Advanced Technology Attachment
BIOS	Basic Input/Output System
BOM	Bill Of Materials
CD	Compact Disc
Chipset	Term used to define a collection of integrated components required to make a PC function.
Hard drives	Physical hard drives attached to a RAID controller
DEVSLP	Serial ATA Device Sleep
DOS	Disk Operating System
GB	Giga-byte
HDD	Hard Drive
I/O	Input/Output
ICH	I/O Controller Hub
ICH9	Intel® 82801IR/DO SATA RAID Controller
IDE	Integrated Drive Electronics
INF	Information file (.inf) used by Microsoft operating systems that support the Plug & Play feature. When installing a driver, this file provides the OS needed information about driver filenames, driver components, and supported hardware.
Intel® Option ROM (OROM)	Standard Plug and Play option ROM that provides a pre-operating system user interface for the Intel RAID implementation.
MB	Mega-byte
Migration	Term used to describe the movement of data from one configuration or usage model to another.
OEM	Original Equipment Manufacturer
Option ROM	A code module built into the System BIOS that provides extended support for a particular piece of hardware. For this product, the Option ROM provides boot support for RAID 0/1/5/10 volumes, and provides a user interface for configuring and managing RAID 0/1/5/10 volumes.
OS	Operating System
PATA	Parallel ATA
PCH	Platform Controller Hub is the new term for Intel chipsets
PCI	Peripheral Components Interconnect
PFW	Package for the Web

Term	Definition
PIO	Programmed Input Output
PnP	Plug and Play
Port 0..3	Term used to describe the point at which a SATA drive is physically connected to the SATA Controller. Port n is the nth of the four available ports in ICH9 systems, where n=0..3
RAID	Redundant Array of Independent Disks
RAID 0	A RAID level where data is striped across multiple physical hard drives (aka striping)
RAID 1	A RAID level where data is mirrored between hard drives to provide data redundancy (aka mirroring)
RAID 5	A RAID level where data and parity are stripped across the hard drives to provide good read/write performance and data redundancy. The parity is stripped in a rotating sequence (aka Stripping and rotating parity).
RAID 10	A RAID level where information is striped across a two disk array for system performance. Each of the drives in the array has a mirror for fault tolerance. (aka Stripping and mirroring)
RAID volume	A block of capacity allocated from a RAID Array and arranged into a RAID topology. Operating Systems typically interpret a RAID volume as a physical hard drive.
RAM	Random Access Memory. Usually refers to the system's main memory
ROM	Read Only Memory
RST	Intel® Rapid Storage Technology
RTD3	Runtime D3
SATA	Serial ATA
SCSI	Small Computer System Interface
SP#	Service Pack (number)
Strip	Grouping of data on a single physical hard drive within a RAID volume
SRT	Intel® Smart Response Technology
SSD	Solid State Drive
SSHD	Solid-State Hybrid Drive
Stripe	The sum of all strips in a horizontal axis across physical hard drives within a RAID volume
UI	User Interface

Glossary

A B C D E F H I L M N O P R S U V W

- A
  - **Accelerated disk or volume**
    A disk or RAID volume that has its non-volatile cache enabled in either maximized or enhanced mode.
  - **Access master or recovery disk files:**
    Action to view the files located on the master or recovery disk of a recovery volume using Windows Explorer*. Selecting this option sets the volume in read-only and volume updates are not allowed. This action is only available when the recovery volume is in on request update mode or running off the recovery disk.
  - **Activate port LED:**
    Action to locate the port connected to a disk present on the system by activating the Light Emitting Diode (LED) light.
  - **AHCI:**
    An interface specification that allows software to communicate with SATA devices such as host bus adapters, and enables advanced SATA features such as Native Command Queuing, native hot plugging, and power management. Advanced Host Controller Interface (AHCI).
  - **Array:**
    An abstraction layer or collection of two or more disks used to manage RAID volumes existing on a same collection of disks. RAID arrays are not visible to the operating system.
  - **At risk:**
    Status indicative that a disk or device has experienced a SMART event, and that an impending error condition was detected and the disk or device is now at risk of failure.
  - **ATAPI device:**
    A mass storage device with a parallel interface such as CD-ROM, CD-RW, DVD-ROM, Blu-ray Disc, and tape drives. Advanced Technology Attachment Packet Interface (ATAPI).
- B
  - **Blocks with media errors:**
    Number of inconsistencies found during the data verification of a RAID volume. This feature only applies to the verification process or the verification and repair process.
    Bus Protocol Group:
    A bus protocol group represents a set of bus protocols with similar performance characteristic. Bus Protocol Groups are listed here in ascending order of speed:1
    1- SATA
    2- PCIe
- C
  - **Cache**
    A resource allocation on a storage component used for temporary data operations. Cache can be allocated in components such as RAM or non-volatile memory.
  - **Cache device**
    The selected solid state disk used for cache storage in an SRT configuration.
  - **Cache volume**
    The portion of the cache device (a solid state disk) that holds the non-volatile cache data in an SRT configuration. That portion is configured into a single-disk RAID-0 volume.
  - **Change volume type:**
    Action to change the volume from one RAID configuration to another, and move data from one RAID volume to another. A RAID 1 volume can also be converted to a recovery volume, and vice versa.
  - **Continuous update mode:**
    Update mode assigned to a recovery volume, where data on the master disk is copied to the recovery disk automatically, as long as both disks are connected to the system.
- D
  - **Data stripe size:**

Size of a grouping of data on a single physical disk within a RAID volume. Reported in kilobytes (KB).

- **Data volume**
  The portion of extra space on the cache device (a solid state disk) that can be used for data storage. That portion is configured into a single-disk RAID-0 volume.
- **Degraded:**
  Volume status indicative that one member has failed or is missing. This status only applies to recovery, RAID 1, RAID 5, and RAID 10 volumes.
- **Disassociating a cache**
  The action of removing the association between the non-volatile cache and the accelerated disk or volume.
- **Disk data cache:**
  A cache memory within a hard drive that temporarily stores frequently used data sectors for faster access. As a result, overall hard drive performance is improved.
- **Disk:**
  A hard or floppy disk. Also known as hard drive or hard disk drive.

· E

- **E-mail notification:**
  Alert mechanism that allows the user to receive storage system information, warning, and error notifications by e-mail via SMTP. By default, this feature is disabled and requires configuration settings such as the SMTP host and e-mail addresses to be set up.
- **Enhanced Mode**
  An acceleration mode that uses write-through, non-volatile cache to improve performance. The mode also is known as “separation safe” because all host-write requests are written to the accelerated disk or volume and possibly to the non-volatile cache.

· F

- **Failed:**
  Volume and disk status indicative that one or more array members are missing or have failed.
- **Firmware:**
  Permanent instructions and data programmed directly into the read-only memory (ROM) for controlling the operation of the computer. Firmware usually requires updates to fix defects or add features to the hardware.

· H

- **Hide master or recovery disk files:**
  Action to close the display of files located on a master or recovery disk in a recovery volume after viewing them in Windows Explorer*. This option is only available when ‘Access recovery disk files’ or ’Access master disk files’ was previously selected. Once disk files are hidden, volume updates can resume.
- **Hot plug:**
  Action to remove or insert a SATA disk when the system is powered on.

· I

- **Increase volume size:**
  Action to expand the data storage capacity of a volume by utilizing the available array space on a RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5, or RAID 10 volume.
- **Initialize:**
  Process of synchronizing all redundant data on a volume prior to creating a volume, verifying and repairing data, or changing volume type. Initialization is still required for non-redundant volumes such as RAID 0 to ensure that data is readable before starting the verification process.
- **Intel® Rapid Recover Technology:**
  Official name for Intel’s technology that allows the user to copy data from a master disk (source) to a recovery disk (destination) either continuously or on request.
- **Intel® Rapid Storage Technology:**
  Official name for Intel's Windows-based software to provide support for high-performance, fault-tolerant, and capacity SATA RAID arrays on select supported chipsets. Intel Rapid Storage Technology also provides support for Intel® Rapid

Recover Technology, AHCI Native Command Queuing, and matrix RAID for two RAID volumes on a single array.

- L
  - **Locked:**
    Volume and disk status indicative that the data is protected with a password and cannot be accessed until disks are unlocked.
- M
  - **Mark as spare:**
    Action to designate an available and compatible SATA disk as the default destination for automatic rebuilds in the event that an array member fails or is missing.
  - **Master disk:**
    The disk that is the designated source drive in a recovery volume.
  - **Maximized Mode**
    An acceleration mode that uses write-back, non-volatile cache to improve performance better than the enhanced Mode. This mode is optimized for input/output performance and power savings.
    Memory Group
    A memory group represents a set of backend storage media types with similar performance characteristics. Memory Groups are listed here in ascending order of speed:
    1- Spindle Device (HDD)
    2- Nand Spindle Hybrid Device (SSHD)
    3- NAND (PCIE and SSD)
  - **Migrating:**
    Volume status indicative that data is being moved/transferred across selected storage devices due to a change request in the storage system configuration, such as changing volume type, creating a volume preserving existing data, increasing the volume capacity, or changing data stripe size.
- N
  - **Native Command Queuing:**
    Command protocol in SATA that allows multiple commands to be outstanding within a disk at the same time. The commands are dynamically reordered to increase disk performance.
  - **Normal:**
    Volume, disk, and device status indicative that they are in a healthy state, functioning as expected, disks are properly connected, and data is fully accessible.
- O
  - **Offline:**
    Disk status indicative that an array disk is locked (the volume status displays as locked), that the recovery volume is in on request update mode, or that your computer is running on battery and data updates to the recovery volume are not available.
  - **On request update mode:**
    Update mode assigned to a recovery volume, where data on the master disk is copied to the recovery disk when the user requests it. Only changes since the last update process are saved to the recovery disk.
  - **Option ROM:**
    Firmware that is called by the system BIOS in order to communicate and provide support for a hardware device. For this product, the option ROM provides boot support for RAID volumes as well as a user interface for configuring and managing RAID volumes. Also known as OROM.
- P
  - **PCIe Storage Device:**
    A storage device that connects to the PCIe bus. PCIe devices can contain either an AHCI or NVMe communication controller.
    Port:
    An internal or external data connection of a computer (e.g., SATA controller) to which a peripheral device (e.g., SATA disk) can be attached.
- R

- **RAID 0:**
  A RAID type or configuration where data is striped across multiple physical disks. Data is split into manageable blocks called strips across array members. Striping does not create data redundancy but improves read/write performance.
- **RAID 1:**
  A RAID type or configuration where data is mirrored across a second physical disk in the array. Mirroring is a key feature that ensures real-time data redundancy and increased fault tolerance. There is no striping.
- **RAID 10:**
  A RAID type or configuration that uses four disks to create a combination of RAID type 0 and 1. The data is striped across a two-disk array forming a RAID 0 component. Each of the disks in the RAID 0 array is mirrored by a disk in the RAID 1 array.
- **RAID 5:**
  A RAID type or configuration where data and parity are striped into manageable blocks called strips across three or more physical disks. This type is a preferred configuration as it combines efficiency, fault-tolerance, and data performance.
- **RAID:**
  Redundant Array of Independent/Inexpensive Disks is a technology used for computer data storage schemes that divide and/or replicate data among multiple disks. RAID can be designed to provide increased data reliability or increased I/O (input/output) performance, or both. A number of standard schemes have evolved which are referred to as levels or types. Intel® Rapid Storage Technology software supports RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5, and RAID 10 configurations (refer to each RAID type definition for more information).
- **Read-only:**
  Recovery volume status indicative that the recovery or master disk files are accessed, allowing files on the disk to be read or copied, but not changed or saved.
- **Rebuild:**
  The process of restoring a recovery, RAID 1, RAID 5, and RAID 10 volume in the event that a volume disk has failed or is missing. If a spare disk is present and compatible, the application will automatically use it as a replacement for the failed disk. An automatic rebuild process will also occur if a RAID 1 member is removed and then reconnected, in order to re-establish the mirroring. This process does not apply to RAID 0 volumes.
- **Recover data:**
  The action of retrieving data in the event that a recovery volume has failed due to a missing or failed master disk. Data from the recovery disk is copied to a new or healthy master disk, restoring data redundancy. Selecting this option will overwrite all master disk data with data on the recovery disk.
- **Recovery disk:**
  The disk that is the designated destination drive in a recovery volume.
- **Recovery volume:**
  A two-disk redundant volume that includes a master disk (source) and a recovery disk (destination) and uses Intel® Rapid Recover Technology. This configuration provides flexibility of volume data updates and maximum data redundancy.

  Remapped:
  Remapping hardware in the chipset allows a PCIe STORAGE DEVICE to appear to the OS as if it were an extra port on the Chipset's internal AHCI controller rather than a separate controller on the PCIe bus
- **Repair:**
  The process of fixing verification errors and blocks with media errors found during the verification process. This feature is only available for volumes with a normal or at risk status. A RAID 0 cannot be repaired due to its non-redundant configuration.
- **Reset disk to normal:**
  Action to return a failed or at risk disk to a normal state. We recommend that you contact the manufacturer for more information to prevent potential data loss.
- **Reset to available:**
  Action to return a disk previously marked as a spare to an available state.
- **Reset volume to normal:**

Action to return a failed volume where both array disks are present and normal to a normal state. This feature allows you to access and attempt a recovery of healthy volume data.

- S
  - **SATA disk:**
    A disk with an interface that transmits data using a serial protocol in order to communicate with the SATA controller.
  - **SATA transfer rate:**
    Rate at which the SATA controller and SATA disk communicate with each other. Transfer rates are important when large contiguous blocks of data are being used, such as video and image files. Reported in gigabits/seconds (Gb/s).
  - **SATA:**
    A successor to ATA and PATA, SATA is a computer bus technology primarily designed for transfer of data between storage devices such as hard drives or optical devices, and a computer. Benefits of this technology are: usage of high-speed serial cables, air cooling to work more efficiently, faster transfers, the ability to remove devices while operating (hot plugging), enables more reliable operation with tighter data integrity checks. Also known as Serial Advanced Technology Attachment or Serial ATA.
  - **Single-disk RAID 0**
    A RAID-0 volume that has one (1) disk as its array disk. This is the volume type used to create the non-volatile cache region on a solid state disk being used for caching. This volume type creates an OS-visible volume that enables access to extra space on the solid state disk that is not being used for caching.
  - **Size:**
    Reports the total capacity of a physical device such as a SATA disk, a volume, or an array.
  - **Storage system:**
    One or more physical disks or devices that act as a unit for data storage.
  - **System disk:**
    A disk that contains system files required to start and run the operating system. By default, the Windows operating system files are in the WINDOWS folder, and the supporting files are in the WINDOWS\System32 folder.
  - **System volume:**
    A volume that refers to the disk(s) volume that contains the hardware-specific files that are needed to start Windows, such as Ntldr, Boot.ini, and Ntdetect.com, as well as the Windows operating system files and supporting files. The system volume can be the same volume as the boot volume.
- U
  - **Unknown:**
    Disk status indicative that its usage could not be determined, due to a possible incompatibility between this software version and the disk configuration, or a virus. Also a volume status indicative that the volume is in an unexpected state due to a configuration error. Data on the volume can no longer be accessed.
  - **Update mode:**
    Type of update assigned to a recovery volume. The update mode can be set to continuous, where master disk changes are automatically saved to the recovery disk, or set to on request, where updates of the recovery disk can be requested immediately.
- V
  - **Verify:**
    Action of scanning data to detect any types of data damage, disk read errors, and volume data inconsistencies. As an option, errors found can be corrected on redundant RAID volumes. This feature is only available for volumes with a normal or at risk status.
  - **Volume size:**
    Amount of data that can be stored on a volume; reported in bytes (B) or %.
  - **Volume type:**

Configuration of a volume which determines how data is stored and managed to improve read/write performance, increase fault tolerance and/or storage capacity.

- **Volume write-back cache:**
  A cache memory used to enhance the read/write performance of a RAID volume by grouping multiple I/O requests into fewer requests and by writing from the cache to the volume at defined intervals.
- **Volume:**
  A fixed amount of space across a RAID array that is structured to emulate a single physical hard drive and appears as such to the operating system. Volumes have drive letters assigned to them and some volumes can span multiple hard disks.

- W
  - **Windows Disk Management*:**
    Microsoft Windows* system utility for managing the disks and partitions or volumes that they contain. Disk Management allows the initialization of new disks, volume creation, and formatting. Most disk-related tasks can be performed using this system utility without shutting down or restarting the computer; most configuration changes take effect immediately.
  - **Write-back cache allocation:**
    Size of the dynamic random access memory (DRAM) that is allocated for write-back caching on all volumes present on the system. The cache size is set to 16 megabytes (MB) by default.

29 Troubleshooting

This section explains how to resolve the most common problems that may occur while using the application. If you have any questions regarding installing, using or maintaining this product, you can also visit Intel's online support site which provides you with self-help resources and electronic problem submission.

29.1 Failed Volumes

RAID 0
A RAID 0 volume is reported as failed when one of its members is disconnected or has failed. In both cases, the volume and its data are no longer accessible.

Cause	Solution
Missing array disk	Follow this procedure to recover data: 1. Power off your computer and reconnect the missing disk. 2. Turn on your computer. During the system startup, the volume status will display as 'Normal' in the Intel Rapid Storage Technology option ROM user interface. 3. Once the operating system is running, open Intel Rapid Storage Technology from the Start menu or click the Intel Rapid Storage Technology notification area icon. 4. Under 'Status', verify that the volume and disks status display as 'Normal'. You can also review this information under 'Manage'.
Failed array disk	In most cases, the volume cannot be recovered and any data on the volume is lost. However, before deleting the volume, you can try resetting the disks to normal, and then attempt a data recovery. If the read/write data access consistently fails, the disk will likely return to a failed state immediately. Refer to Troubleshooting Disk Events for instructions on resetting a disk to normal. This procedure deletes the failed volume: 1. Power off your computer and replace the failed SATA disk with a new one that is of equal or greater capacity. 2. Turn on your computer. During the system startup, the volume status will display as 'Failed' in the Intel Rapid Storage Technology option ROM user interface. 3. Press Ctrl-I to access the main menu of the option ROM user interface. 4. Select Delete RAID Volume from the main menu. 5. From the Delete Volume menu, select the failed RAID volume, using the up and down arrow keys. 6. Press the 'Delete' key to delete the volume, then 'Y' to confirm. 7. Create a new RAID 0 volume using the new disk. If the failed disk was part of the system volume, you will also need to reinstall the operating system.

RAID 5
A RAID 5 volume is reported as failed when two or more of its members have failed.

Cause	Solution
Two or more array disks failed	In most cases, the volume cannot be recovered and any data on the volume is lost. However, before deleting the volume, you can try resetting the disks to normal, and then attempt a data recovery. If the read/write data access consistently fails, the disk will likely return to a failed state immediately. Refer to Troubleshooting Disk Events for instructions on resetting a disk to normal.

	This procedure deletes the failed volume: 1. Power off your computer and replace the failed SATA disks with new ones that are of equal or greater capacity. 2. Turn on your computer. During the system startup, the volume status will display as 'Failed' in the Intel Rapid Storage Technology option ROM user interface. 3. Press Ctrl-I to access the main menu of the option ROM user interface. 4. Select Delete RAID Volume from the main menu. 5. From the Delete Volume menu, select the failed RAID volume, using the up and down arrow keys. 6. Press the 'Delete' key to delete the volume, then 'Y' to confirm. 7. Create a new RAID 5 volume using the new disks. If the failed disk was part of the system volume, you will also need to reinstall the operating system.

RAID 10

A RAID 10 volume is reported as failed when two adjacent members are disconnected or have failed, or when three or four of its members are disconnected or have failed.

Cause	Solution
Two adjacent array disks missing	1. Power off your computer and reconnect the missing disks. 2. The rebuild operation will start automatically. You can follow the progress by hovering over the notification area icon or by reviewing the volume status under 'Status' or 'Manage'.
Three or four array disks missing	In most cases, the volume cannot be recovered and any data on the volume is lost. This procedure deletes the failed volume: 1. Power off your computer and reconnect the missing disks. 2. Turn on your computer. During the system startup, the volume status will display as 'Failed' in the Intel Rapid Storage Technology option ROM user interface. 3. Press Ctrl-I to access the main menu of the option ROM user interface. 4. Select Delete RAID Volume from the main menu. 5. From the Delete Volume menu, select the failed RAID volume, using the up and down arrow keys. 6. Press the 'Delete' key to delete the volume, then 'Y' to confirm. 7. Create a new RAID 10 volume using the new disks. 8. You will then need to reinstall the operating system on the new volume.
Two or more array disks failed	In most cases, the volume cannot be recovered and any data on the volume is lost. However, before deleting the volume, you can try resetting the disks to normal, and then attempt a data recovery. If the read/write data access consistently fails, the disk will likely return to a failed state immediately. Refer to Troubleshooting Disk Events for instructions on resetting a disk to normal. This procedure deletes the failed volume: 1. Power off your computer and replace the failed SATA disks with new ones that are of equal or greater capacity. 2. Turn on your computer. During the system startup, the volume status will display as 'Failed' in the Intel Rapid Storage Technology option ROM user interface. 3. Press Ctrl-I to access the main menu of the option ROM user interface. 4. Select Delete RAID Volume from the main menu. 5. From the Delete Volume menu, select the failed RAID volume, using the up and down arrow keys. 6. Press the 'Delete' key to delete the volume, then 'Y' to confirm. 7. Create a new RAID 10 volume using the new disks. 8. You will then need to reinstall the operating system on the new volume.

29.2 Degraded Volumes

Recovery Volume
A recovery volume is reported as degraded when the recovery disk has failed or when the master disk is disconnected or has failed. Data mirroring and redundancy are lost because the system can only use the functional member.

Cause	Solution
Recovery disk failed	We recommend that you rebuild the degraded volume to a new disk to return the volume and overall storage system status to normal. However, you can try resetting the disk to normal, but if the read/write data access consistently fails, the disk will likely return to a failed state immediately. Refer to Troubleshooting Disk Events for instructions on resetting a disk to normal. If a SATA disk is compatible, available and normal, follow this procedure to rebuild the volume: 1. Under 'Status', click 'Rebuild to another disk'. 2. Select the disk you want to use to rebuild the volume, and then click 'Rebuild'. 3. The rebuild operation starts immediately. You can follow the progress by hovering over the notification area icon or by reviewing the volume status under 'Status' or 'Manage'. 4. Once the operation successfully completed, the recovery disk and volume status will display as 'Normal'. 5. Once completed, the volume returns to the last update mode to which it was set before the issue was reported. **Note** If there is no available disk present, you will need to power off your computer and connect a new SATA disk that is equal or greater capacity than the failed disk. Once your computer is back up and running you can follow the rebuild procedure described above.
Master disk missing	If you can reconnect the missing master disk, follow this procedure to recover data: 1. Power off your computer and reconnect the missing disk. 2. Turn on your computer and the system will automatically boot from the recovery disk. 3. Under 'Status', in the Manage subsection, click 'Recover data' or click the recovery volume in the storage system view, and then click 'Recover data'. 4. Click 'Yes' to confirm. 5. The recovery operation starts immediately and cannot be canceled. You can follow the progress by hovering over the notification area icon or by reviewing the volume status under 'Status' or 'Manage'. 6. Once completed, the volume returns to the last update mode to which it was set before the issue was reported. If you cannot reconnect the missing disk and a SATA disk is available and normal, follow this procedure to rebuild the volume: 1. Under 'Status', click 'Rebuild to another disk'. 2. Select the disk you want to use to rebuild the volume, and then click 'Rebuild'. 3. The rebuild operation starts immediately. You can follow the progress by hovering over the notification area icon or by reviewing the volume status under 'Status' or 'Manage'. 4. Once the operation successfully completed, the master disk and volume status will display as 'Normal'. 5. Once completed, the volume returns to the last update mode to which it was set before the issue was reported.

	Note If you cannot reconnect the missing disk or rebuild to an available disk, you will need to power off the computer and connect a new SATA disk. Once rebuilt, the recovery volume will be limited to its original size even if the new disk is larger than the original master disk. Once your computer is back up and running you can follow the rebuild procedure described above.
Master disk failed	We recommend that you rebuild the degraded volume to a new disk to return the volume and overall storage system status to normal. However, you can try resetting the disk to normal, but if the read/write data access consistently fails, the disk will likely return to a failed state immediately. To reset the failed master disk and the volume to normal, follow this procedure: 1. Under 'Status', click 'Reset disk to normal'. Note that the volume is now running off the recovery disk, and that the master disk is reported as offline. 2. Under 'Status', in the Manage subsection, click 'Recover data' or click the recovery volume in the storage system view, and then click 'Recover data'. **Warning** Starting this action will override existing data on the master disk and update it with the data on the recovery disk. Backup all valuable data before continuing. 3. Click 'Yes' to confirm. 4. The recovery operation starts immediately and cannot be canceled. You can follow the progress by hovering over the notification area icon or by reviewing the volume status under 'Status' or 'Manage'. 5. Once the operation successfully completed, the master disk and volume status will display as 'Normal'. If a SATA disk is compatible, available and normal, follow this procedure to rebuild the volume: 1. Under 'Status', click 'Rebuild to another disk'. 2. Select the disk you want to use to rebuild the volume, and then click 'Rebuild'. 3. The rebuild operation starts immediately. You can follow the progress by hovering over the notification area icon or by reviewing the volume status under 'Status' or 'Manage'. 4. Once the operation successfully completed, the master disk and volume status will display as 'Normal'. 5. Once completed, the volume returns to the last update mode to which it was set before the issue was reported. **Note** If there is no available disk present, you will need to power off your computer and connect a new SATA disk. Once rebuilt, the recovery volume will be limited to its original size even if the new disk is larger than the original master disk. Once your computer is back up and running you can follow the rebuild procedure described above.

RAID 1
A RAID 1 volume is reported as degraded when one of its members is disconnected or has failed. Data mirroring and redundancy are lost because the system can only use the functional member.

RAID 5
A RAID 5 volume is reported as degraded when one of its members is disconnected or has failed. When two or more array disks are disconnected or have failed, the volume is reported as failed.

RAID 10
A RAID 10 volume is reported as degraded when one of its members is disconnected or has failed, or when two non-adjacent members are disconnected or have failed. When two or more array disks are disconnected or have failed, the volume is reported as failed.

Cause	Solution
Missing array disk	If you can reconnect the missing disk, follow this procedure to rebuild the volume: 1. Power off your computer and reconnect the missing disk. 2. Turn on your computer and the rebuild operation will start automatically. If you cannot reconnect the missing disk and a SATA disk is available and normal, follow this procedure to rebuild the volume: 1. If a SATA disk is compatible, available and normal, follow this procedure to rebuild the volume: 2. Select the disk you want to use to rebuild the volume, and then click 'Rebuild'. 3. The rebuild operation starts immediately. You can follow the progress by hovering over the notification area icon or by reviewing the volume status under 'Status' or 'Manage'. 4. Once the operation successfully completed, the array disk and volume status will display as 'Normal'. **Note** If there is no available disk present, you will need to power off your computer and connect a new SATA disk that is equal or greater capacity than the failed disk. Once your computer is back up and running you can follow the rebuild procedure described above.
Failed array disk	We recommend that you rebuild the degraded volume to a new disk to return the volume and overall storage system status to normal. However, you can try resetting the disk to normal, which will prompt the volume to start rebuilding automatically. But if the read/write data access consistently fails, the disk will likely return to a failed state immediately and you will need to rebuild the volume to another disk. If a SATA disk is compatible, available and normal, follow this procedure to rebuild the volume: 1. Under 'Status', click 'Rebuild to another disk'. 2. Select the disk you want to use to rebuild the volume, and then click 'Rebuild'. 3. The rebuild operation starts immediately. You can follow the progress by hovering over the notification area icon or by reviewing the volume status under 'Status' or 'Manage'. 4. Once the operation successfully completed, the array disk and volume status will display as 'Normal'. **Note** If there is no available disk present, you will need to power off your computer and connect a new SATA disk that is equal or greater capacity than the failed disk. Once your computer is back up and running you can follow the rebuild procedure described above.

29.3 Other Volume States

Locked	
Cause	Solution
At least one (but not all) disk included in the volume is locked with a password.	In this state, the overall storage system health is still reported as normal, but we recommend that you unlock the disks to make the volume data fully accessible. Follow this procedure to unlock a disk: 1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the disk you want to unlock. The disk properties are now displayed on the left. 2. Click 'Unlock'. 3. Enter the password, and then click 'Unlock'. Repeat this procedure for all locked disks included in the volume in order to unlock the volume. **Note** If all the disks included in a volume are locked, the volume is no longer displayed
Incompatible	
Cause	Solution
Indicates that the volume was moved to another system that does not support the volume type and configuration.	In this situation, volume data is accessible to the operating system and can be backed up, but the volume cannot operate because your system does not support its RAID configuration. Here are your options: 1. Reconnect the volume to the computer where the volume was originally created, and continue using it. 2. Delete the volume, and then create a new volume with a RAID configuration that is supported by the current system. Follow the procedure described above to delete the volume. **Warning** When a volume is deleted, all existing data on the member disks of the selected volume is permanently erased. It's recommended that you backup all valuable data prior to beginning this action.
Unknown	
Cause	Solution
The volume is in an unexpected state due to a configuration error.	The application is unable to detect the exact nature of the problem. Try restarting your computer. If the error persists, back up all valuable data and delete the volume using the option ROM user interface. Refer to the user's manual accessible from the Online Support area for details on using the option ROM.
Power-saving mode (Recovery volumes only)	
Cause	Solution
Your computer is running on battery and the volume is in continuous update mode. Data updates to the recovery disk or a data recovery operation are not occurring.	Data mirroring and redundancy are lost, and your data is at risk in the event of a disk failure. Reconnect your computer to the power supply, and the operation that was in progress prior to running on battery will resume automatically. **Note** If a data recovery was in progress, the overall storage subsystem health is reported as degraded because the operation could not be completed.
Data update needed (Recovery volumes only)	
Cause	Solution
The data on the recovery disk is not synchronized with the data on the	Data mirroring and redundancy are lost, and your data is at risk in the event of a disk failure. Follow this procedure to update data on the recovery disk:

master disk.	1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume. The volume properties are now displayed on the left. 2. Click 'Update data'. 3. Select the check box if you don't want this confirmation message to display each time you request an update. Click 'Yes' to confirm. 4. The update process can be instantaneous or may take a while depending on the amount of data being copied. You can follow the progress by hovering over the notification area icon or by reviewing the volume status under 'Status' or 'Manage'.

Running off recovery disk (Recovery volumes only)

Cause	Solution
Your computer was booted from the recovery disk using the option ROM, and the volume is operating from that disk. With this reverse configuration, the recovery disk is the designated source drive and data updates to the master disk are not available.	Data mirroring and redundancy are lost, and your data is at risk in the event of a disk failure. A data recovery from the recovery disk to the master disk is required to maintain full redundancy. **Warning** Completing this action will overwrite all master disk data with the data on the recovery disk. Backup all valuable data prior to starting this action. 1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume. The volume properties are now displayed on the left. 2. Click 'Recover data', then 'OK' to confirm. 3. Once complete, we recommend that you restart your computer from the master disk using the option ROM user interface to return to a normal state.

Recovery disk read-only (Recovery volumes only)

Cause	Solution
The recovery disk files have been accessed and display in Windows Explorer*.	In this state, any data written to the master disk is not copied to the recovery disk because it is read-only. Data mirroring and redundancy may be lost and we recommend that you hide the recovery files to resume data updates. Follow this procedure to hide recovery disk files from Manage Disk or from Manage Volume: 1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume or the recovery disk. The element properties are now displayed on the left. 2. Click 'Hide Files' from Manage Disk or 'Hide recovery disk files' from Manage Volume. 3. The Windows Explorer window closes. You can resume data updates by clicking 'Update data' under Manage Volume. To copy the latest changes to the recovery disk automatically, change the update mode to continuous from the same area.

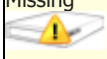
Master disk read-only (Recovery volumes only)

Cause	Solution
Your computer was booted from the recovery disk using the option ROM, and the volume is operating from that disk. The master disk files have been accessed and are displayed in Windows Explorer*.	Data mirroring and redundancy are lost, and your data is at risk in the event of a disk failure. We recommend that you hide the master disk files when finished with your review, and proceed with a data recovery to the master disk in order to maintain full redundancy. Follow this procedure to hide master disk files from Manage Disk: 1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume or the master disk. The element properties are now displayed on the left. 2. Click 'Hide Files' from Manage Disk or 'Hide master disk files' from Manage Volume. 3. The Windows Explorer window closes and the volume is displayed as running off recovery disk. Refer to the 'Running off recovery disk' procedure above to recover data to the master disk.

Missing volume

Cause	Solution
A driver upgrade or downgrade was performed while a data migration was in progress.	The driver cannot recognize the volume or read its data if a driver upgrade or downgrade was performed during a volume migration. Volume migrations occur after one of the following operations was initiated: • Creation of a system volume or data volume while preserving data. • Volume type change combined with disk addition to the new RAID configuration. • Volume size increase. • Disk addition to an existing array. **Troubleshooting a data volume** 1. If the data migration involved a data volume, you will need to reverse the driver upgrade or downgrade operation and return to the original driver version. This will restore driver and volume compatibility. 2. Once the operation has completed, restart your computer. 3. Open the application and make sure that the volume displays again in the storage system view. Data migration operation should resume immediately. **Troubleshooting a system disk** If the data migration involved a system disk or volume, it is highly likely that you will not be able to start your system because the driver cannot read the system files. The following options may allow you to load the operating system again: • Restore a known good configuration. • Boot from a flash drive that supports NTFS partitioning and includes the storage driver files. • Bring the corrupt disk to another system, and then replace the storage driver files from a compatible driver version. Return the disk to the original system and try booting. **Troubleshooting a system volume** If the data migration involved a system disk or volume, it is highly likely that you will not be able to start your system because the driver cannot read the system files. The following options may allow you to load the operating system again: • Restore a known good configuration. • Bring all corrupted array disks to another system, and then replace the storage driver files from a compatible driver version. Return the disks to the original system and try booting.

29.4 Disk Events

State	Cause	Solution
Locked	An internal or external disk is protected and locked with a password.	In this state, the overall storage system health is reported as normal, but to make the data fully accessible, you will need to follow this procedure to unlock the disk: 1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the disk you want to unlock. The disk properties are now displayed on the left. 2. Click 'Unlock'. 3. Enter the password, and then click 'Unlock'.
At risk	An impending error condition was detected on an internal or external disk and is now at risk of failure.	The application is detecting early warning signs of failure with a SATA disk that result from a slow degradation over time. When a disk is reported at risk, you can reset that disk to normal, but we recommend that you contact the manufacturer for more information to prevent potential data loss. Follow this procedure to reset the disk to normal: 1. Under 'Status', in the Manage subsection, locate the disk reported as at risk. You can also perform this action from Manage Disk, which is accessible by clicking the disk in the storage system view. 2. Click 'Reset disk to normal'. The page refreshes instantly, returning to a normal state. **Note:** Completing this action clears the event on the disk and does not delete existing data. However, ignoring early warning signs of disk failure may result in data loss. If the disk reported at risk is included in a RAID volume and a compatible spare disk is available, the rebuild process will start automatically. Once complete, the disk reported at risk becomes available and you can reset it to normal to return to a healthy state.
	An unexpected error was detected on a disk that has RAID configuration data (metadata) on it.	In this state, it is likely that some or all of the disk data is inaccessible. After backing up any accessible data, you will need to clear the metadata and reset the disk to return to a normal state. **Warning**: Completing this action will permanently delete existing metadata. Back up any accessible data before continuing. 1. Under 'Status', in the Manage subsection, locate the disk reported as at risk. You can also perform this action from Manage Disk, which is accessible by clicking the disk in the storage system view. 2. Click 'Clear and reset disk', and then click 'Yes' to confirm. 3. Once complete, the page refreshes with the disk returning to a normal state.
Missing 	An array disk is not present or physically connected to the computer.	Ensure that the disk is securely connected to the SATA port and that the SATA cable is functioning properly. If the disk is lost or cannot be reconnected, you will need to connect a new SATA disk, and then rebuild the volume to that new disk. Refer to Degraded or Failed Volumes in this section for instructions on how to rebuild a volume.
	The recovery or master disk	Hide the recovery or master disk files to return the disk

	files have been accessed and display in Windows Explorer*.	status to offline and resume data updates in on request mode. 1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume or the recovery disk. The element properties are now displayed on the left. 2. Click 'Hide Files' from Manage Disk or 'Hide recovery disk files' from Manage Volume. 3. The Windows Explorer window closes.
Failed	An internal or external disk has failed to properly complete read and write operations in a timely manner, and it has exceeded its recoverable error threshold.	Back up your data and we recommend that you replace the disk as soon as possible. If the failed disk is an array disk, the volume will be reported as degraded or failed depending on its configuration. Refer to Degraded or Failed Volumes in this section for instructions on resolving the problem. In a failed state, disk data may be lost, but you can try resetting the disk to normal, and then attempt a data recovery. Follow this procedure to reset the failed disk to normal: 1. Under 'Status', in the Manage subsection, locate the disk reported as failed. You can also perform this action from Manage Disk, which is accessible by clicking the disk in the storage system view. 2. Click 'Reset disk to normal'. The page refreshes instantly, returning to a normal state. **Note** If the failed array disk is part of a redundant volume, the volume will start rebuilding automatically as soon as the disk is reset to normal.
Offline	An internal or external array disk is locked and data on that disk cannot be read.	We recommend that you unlock the disk to make the volume data fully accessible. If more than one array disk is locked, unlock all those disks to unlock the volume.
	The recovery volume is in on request update mode.	Change the volume update mode to continuous. 1. Under 'Status' or 'Manage', in the storage system view, click the recovery volume. The volume properties are now displayed on the left. 2. Click 'Change mode', and then click 'Yes' to confirm. 3. The page refreshes and the volume properties report the new update mode.
	Your computer is running on battery and data updates to the recovery disk are not available as long as that disk is offline.	Reconnect your computer to the power supply in order to return the recovery disk to a normal state.

29.5 Caching Issues

Cache volume is missing

Regardless of what the acceleration mode currently is, cache and volume data is most likely lost. Devices that are part of the acceleration configuration display in the following states:

- Solid state disk: Inaccessible
- Cache volume: No longer displays
- Data volume (if applicable): No longer displays
- Accelerated volume (if applicable): No longer displays
- Accelerated disk (if applicable): Offline
- Array disks: Offline

Cause

The solid state disk was removed or the disk is present but cannot be detected.

Solution

The application provides the option to clear the metadata on the array disks or previously accelerated disk and reset these disks to a normal state.

1. Under Status, in the Manage subsection, click 'Clear and reset' next to each array disk reported as offline. You can also perform this action under 'Manage' by clicking any offline disk reported in the storage system view.
2. Click 'Yes' to confirm.
3. The array disk now displays as an available disk in a normal state and can be used to create a new volume

Cache volume is failing

Cause

An impending error condition (e.g., SMART events) was detected on the solid state disk that is used as a cache device. As a result, both the disk and cache volume are at risk of failure.

Solution

Early warning signs of failure with the solid state disk are detected that result from a slow degradation over time. When a disk used as a cache device is reported at risk, you can reset that disk to normal or replace the solid state disk after resetting it to available.
Regardless of which option you choose, we recommend that you contact the manufacturer for more information to prevent potential data loss.

Current acceleration mode: Enhanced
Follow this procedure to reset the disk to normal:

1. Under 'Status', in the Manage subsection, locate the disk reported as at risk. You can also perform this action from Manage Disk, which is accessible by clicking the failing disk in the storage system view.
2. Click 'Reset disk to normal'. The page refreshes instantly, returning to a normal state.
3. The cache volume should also return to a normal state and caching activity should resume.

Completing this action clears the event on the disk and does not delete existing data. However, ignoring early warning signs of disk failure may result in data loss.

Follow this procedure to replace the failing solid state disk:

1. Click 'Accelerate', and then click 'Disable acceleration'.
2. In the dialog, click 'Yes' to confirm.
3. The page refreshes and reports the acceleration as disabled.
4. Click 'Reset to available'.
5. In the dialog, select the check box to confirm that you understand that data on the cache and data volumes will be deleted.

6. Click 'Yes' to confirm.
7. The page refreshes and the storage system displays the solid state disk usage as available.
8. Power off your computer and replace the failing solid state disk with a healthy one.
9. Power on your computer. You can enable acceleration again in order to resume caching activity.

Note
If the last acceleration mode was maximized, that application will automatically transition acceleration to enhanced mode in order to avoid data loss. While transitioning, the mode will display as busy and no acceleration actions will be available until the process is complete.

Current acceleration mode: Maximized

1. If a compatible spare is detected, the volume rebuild operation will start automatically. Once the process is complete, the cache volume will display in a normal state and caching activity will resume.
2. If no compatible spare is detected, the acceleration mode will automatically transition to enhanced in order to avoid data loss. You can then follow the procedures described above to return the solid state disk and cache volume to normal.

Cache volume has failed

Cause

The solid-state disk that is used as a cache device has failed to properly complete read and write operations in a timely manner and it has exceeded its recoverable error threshold. In this state, both cache and data volumes are reported as failed and acceleration is automatically disabled.

Solution

Back up any recoverable data and replace the solid- state disk as soon as possible. In a failed state, disk data may be lost, but you can try recovering it by resetting the disk to normal.

1. In the Manage subsection, under 'Status', locate the disk reported as failed. Alternately, perform this action from Manage Disk, accessible by clicking the disk in the storage system view.
2. Click 'Reset disk to normal'. The page refreshes instantly, returning to a normal state.

If the disk operations continue to fail, the disk will return to a failed state immediately and should be replaced. Follow this procedure:

1. Click 'Accelerate'.
2. Click 'Reset to available'.
3. In the dialog, select the check box to confirm that you understand that data on the cache and data volumes will be deleted.
4. Click 'Yes' to confirm.
5. The page refreshes and the storage system displays the solid state disk usage as available.
6. Power off your computer and replace the failed solid state disk with an operational one.
7. Power on your computer. To resume the caching activity, enable acceleration again.

If acceleration was in maximized mode prior to being automatically disabled, the disk or volume previously associated with the cache will be reported as failed if the data cleaning was unsuccessful.
If data cleaning was successful, once the mode transition is complete, the accelerated disk or volume previously associated with the cache will be reported as normal.

Accelerated disk or volume is missing

Cause

The accelerated disk or volume cannot be detected (e.g., the device was moved to another system) and is reported as inaccessible. Caching activity is no longer occurring.

Solution

If the disk or volume can be reconnected:

1.Power off your computer and reconnect the missing disk or volume.
2.Restart your computer.
3.Once the operating system is running, open the application.
4.Under 'Status', in the Accelerate subsection, verify the accelerated device is properly reported as well as the acceleration mode. Caching activity should resume immediately.

If the disk or volume cannot be reconnected, follow this procedure to disassociate the cache and the missing device:

1.Click 'Accelerate'.
2.Click 'Disassociate'.
3.Click 'Yes' to confirm.
4. The page refreshes and you can now select another disk or volume to accelerate.

Accelerated disk or volume is reporting an issue
Cause • Accelerated disk is reported as being at risk or failed. • Accelerated volume is reported as degraded or failed.
Solution Refer to Troubleshooting Disk Events, Failed Volumes, or Degraded Volumes for detailed procedure on fixing the issue. If you cannot fix the issue reported on the accelerated disk or volume, follow this procedure to disassociate the cache and the missing device: 1.Click 'Accelerate'. 2.Click 'Disassociate'. 3.Click 'Yes' to confirm. 4. The page refreshes and you can now select another disk or volume to accelerate.

29.6 Software Errors

Message	Cause	Solution
An unknown error occurred while running this application. If the problem persists, please restart your computer or try reinstalling the application.	This error may be related to: ssing components rrupted application plication unable to connect to the service plication fails to start.	Restart your computer or try reinstalling the application.
Intel® Rapid Storage Technology is trying to connect to the service.	The application is launched and is attempting to connect to the service in order to run.	If the connection succeeds, the application opens and is fully functional; if the connection fails, the error message described above is displayed. Try starting the service manually using Microsoft Windows* Services, or follow the recommended solution listed above to resolve the problem.
The Intel® Rapid Storage Technology service cannot be started in safe mode.	Your computer was started in safe mode and the operating system is running with a limited set of files and drivers. Intel Rapid Storage Technology cannot start or run in safe mode.	Once you are done troubleshooting application or driver problems in safe mode, you will need to exit safe mode, restart your computer, and then let the operating system start normally. The Intel Rapid Storage Technology service can now be started and open the application.
Multiple users cannot run the application at the same time.	One or more users are attempting to open the application while an instance of the application is already running.	Make sure only one instance of the application is running at a time.
An error occurred due to insufficient resources, and the operation could not be completed. Please try again later.	The Intel® Rapid Storage Technology driver does not have sufficient resources to execute the request. Another operation may be in progress and needs to complete before being able to handle a new request.	Wait a few moments, then try performing the action again.
An unknown error occurred during the volume creation process. Please try recreating the volume.	An unexpected error occurred during the operation, and the application cannot identify its origin. The volume could not be created.	Verify that your hardware is properly connected and try recreating the volume.
An error occurred while an operation was in progress. The operation could not be completed.	An unexpected error occurred during an operation, such as a data migration or a rebuild, and the application cannot identify its origin.	Restart the operation. If the error persists, try restarting your computer and then the operation.
An error occurred and the selected disk or volume could not be accelerated. Please restart your computer, and then try the operation again.	The cache memory allocation was likely increased to use full solid state disk capacity (up to 64 GB) while enabling acceleration.	Follow these steps to accelerate a disk or volume: • Restart your computer to complete the process of allocating the requested cache size. • Launch the application. • Try enabling acceleration again by clicking 'Enable acceleration'.

30 Appendix A: RST SATA Port Bitmap Implementation

30.1 Legacy OROM

RST overloaded offset 0x08 of the PNP header, with a bitmap of which ports make up the PNP header.

E.g., a RAID5 volume whose member disks located on SATA ports 0,2,3 would have a value of 0x0D (0000_1101b) and a pass-thru disk on port 4 would have a value of 0x10 (0001_0000b).

Offset	Size	Value	Description
00h	1	'$'	Signature byte 1
01h	1	'P'	Signature byte 2
02h	1	'N'	Signature byte 3
03h	1	'P'	Signature byte 4
04h	1	01h	Structure revision
05h	1	Varies	Length (in 16 byte blocks)
06h	2	Varies	Offset of next header (0000h if none)
08h	**1**	**00h**	**Reserved**
09h	1	Varies	Checksum
0Ah	4	Varies	Device identifier
0Eh	2	Varies	Offset to manufacturer string (optional)
10h	2	Varies	Offset to product name string (optional)
12h	3	Varies	Device type code
15h	1	Varies	Device indicators
16h	2	Varies	Boot Connection Vector (BCV)
18h	2	Varies	Disconnect Vector (DV)
1Ah	2	Varies	Bootstrap Entry Vector (BEV)
1Ch	2	0000h	Reserved
1Eh	2	Varies	Static resource information vector

30.2 UEFI Driver

*The RST UEFI driver, in an effort to provide similar functionality as in the legacy OROM, has implemented the Port Number value in the Device Path as a bitmap representing the physical disk connections that the Logical Disk represents. The LSB (least significant bit) represents port 0 and increases linearly. E.g. a single pass through disk on SATA port **3** (assuming the SATA ports are enumerated 0 – X) is represented by 0000_**1**000b (or 0x08).*

EFI_DEVICE_PATH_PROTOCOL

For each logical disk that is exposed by the SATA RAID UEFI Driver, an EFI_DEVICE_PATH_PROTOCOL shall be created.

The Device Path Protocol for each logical disk shall be appended to the PCI SATA Controller Device Path.

The fields of the EFI_DEVICE_PATH_PROTOCOL shall be filled out differently depending on whether the device is an ODD or an HDD.

EFI_DEVICE_PATH_PROTOCOL Field	ATAPI (ODD)	HDD/Volume – Logical Device
Type	3 (Messaging Device Path)	3 (Messaging Device Path)
Sub-Type	18 (SATA)	18 (SATA)
Length	10	10
HBA Port Number	Port ID bitmap (bit #n set if device is on port #n)	Port ID bitmap (bit #n set if logical device contains device ID #n) Lowest Significant Bit (LSB) represents port 0.
Port Multiplier Port Number	0x8000 (directly connected)	0x8000 (directly connected)
Logical Unit Number	0	0 for passthrough devices, myVolRaidDevNum for RAID volumes, which is the n^{th} volume created on the array.

31 Appendix B: Common Storage Management Interface Support (CSMI)

Intel® RST driver does not support application development that require interface access to the driver via API method. However RST does support applications developed to interface to the driver via the industry standard specification of the Common Storage Management Interface. We support a subset of the total command set. The below table has a list of the commands that are supported by Intel® RST. For more detail information on the specification you can access the http://www.t11.org/ website. The document number for the specification is 04-468v0.

Supported CSMI commands:

BASE IOCTLs:

CC_CSMI_SAS_GET_DRIVER_INFO
CC_CSMI_SAS_GET_CNTLR_CONFIG
CC_CSMI_SAS_GET_CNTLR_STATUS

RAID IOCTLs:

CC_CSMI_SAS_GET_RAID_INFO
CC_CSMI_SAS_GET_RAID_CONFIG

The following CSMI IOCTLs are supported for both SATA and PCIe AHCI devices:

CC_CSMI_SAS_GET_PHY_INFO
CC_CSMI_SAS_GET_SATA_SIGNATURE
CC_CSMI_SAS_STP_PASSTHRU

32 Appendix C: Drive and Volume Encryption Support

32.1 ATA Security Commands and HDD Password Support

RST supports HDD passwords via the ATA Security command set, long as the host BIOS also supports the ATA security command set. RST volumes, including SRT volumes, may be locked with HDD passwords via the ATA Security command set. In the pre-boot environment, it is required that the BIOS obtain the HDD password before the RST components are loaded.

32.2 Self-Encrypting Drives (SED)

Self-encrypting drives are supported by RST under three scenarios:

1. When SED's are treated as standard drives.
2. When SED's are enabled using HDD passwords, via the ATA Security command set, following the restrictions outlined in section 32.1.
3. When SED's are Opal or eDrive enabled, using 3rd party software, and following configuration and support outlined in Sections 24 and 25.

32.3 Solid State Hybrid Drives (SSHD's) with Encryption

SSHD's with encryption are supported by RST only if those drives can be treated as standard SSHD's.

32.4 RAID Volume and Drive Partition Encryption

RST supports encryption of volumes (including SRT), disks, and individual partitions by software encryption tools with the following restrictions:

1. Partition tables must remain unencrypted.
2. Approximately 6MB of non-partitioned space must be reserved, and remain unencrypted, at the end of the disk. This is the same as any configuration performing a create volume from an existing disk.

It is suggested that drives be encrypted before enabling SRT. This is to ensure that the SRT cache is populated with encrypted data.